

8 Marine Protected Areas

Authors

Lead Author

Brian D. Keller, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

Contributing Authors

Satie Airamé, University of California, Santa Barbara

Billy Causey, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

Alan Friedlander, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

Daniel Gleason, Georgia Southern University

Rikki Grober-Dunsmore, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

Johanna Johnson, Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority

Elizabeth Mcleod, The Nature Conservancy

Steven L. Miller, University of North Carolina at Wilmington

Robert S. Steneck, University of Maine

Christa Woodley, University of California at Davis

NOTE: This information is distributed solely for the purpose of pre-dissemination peer review under applicable information quality guidelines. It has not been formally disseminated by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. It does not represent and should not be construed to represent any agency determination or policy.

1	Chapter Contents	
2		
3	8.1 Background and History	8-4
4	8.1.1 Introduction.....	8-4
5	8.1.2 Historical Context and Origins of National Marine Sanctuaries and Other Types	
6	of Marine Protected Areas	8-6
7	8.1.3 Enabling Legislation	8-9
8	8.1.4 Interpretation of Goals	8-11
9	8.2 Current Status of Management System.....	8-11
10	8.2.1 Key Ecosystem Characteristics on Which Goals Depend	8-11
11	8.2.2 Stressors of Concern	8-15
12	8.2.3 Management Approaches and Sensitivity of Management Goals to Climate	
13	Change 8-23	
14	8.3 Adapting to Climate Change.....	8-25
15	8.3.1 Ameliorate Existing Stressors in Coastal Waters	8-25
16	8.3.2 Protect Apparently Resistant and Potentially Resilient Areas	8-27
17	8.3.3 Develop Networks of MPAs.....	8-27
18	8.3.4 Integrate Climate Change Into MPA Planning, Management, and Evaluation .	8-31
19	8.4 Case Studies	8-34
20	8.4.1 Case Study: the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary	8-34
21	8.4.2 Case Study: The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park	8-42
22	8.4.3 Case Study: The Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian Islands) Marine	
23	National Monument	8-48
24	8.4.4 Case Study: the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary	8-55
25	8.4.5 Conclusions About Case Studies	8-62
26	8.5 Conclusions.....	8-63
27	8.6 References.....	8-65
28	8.7 Acknowledgements.....	8-110
29	8.8 Boxes.....	8-111
30	8.9 Tables.....	8-118
31	8.10 Figures.....	8-122
32		
33		

Chapter Structure

8.1 Background and History

Describes the origins of federal marine protected areas (MPAs), specifically focusing on the 14 MPAs that compose the National Marine Sanctuary Program and the formative factors that shaped that program's mission and goals.

8.2 Current Status of Management System

Reviews existing system stressors, management practices currently used to address National Marine Sanctuary Program goals, and how those goals may be affected by climate change

8.3 Adapting to Climate Change

Discusses approaches to adaptation for planning and management in the context of climate change

8.4 Case Studies

Explores methods for and challenges to incorporating climate change into specific MPA management activities and plans

Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary

Great Barrier Reef Marine Park

Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian Islands) Marine National Monument

Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary

8.5 Conclusions

1
2

1 **8.1 Background and History**

2 **8.1.1 Introduction**

3 Coastal oceans and marine ecosystems are central to the lives and livelihoods of a large and
4 growing proportion of the U.S. population. They provide extensive areas for recreation and
5 tourism and support productive fisheries. Some areas produce significant quantities of oil and
6 gas, and commercial shipping crosses coastal waters. In addition, coral reefs and barrier islands
7 provide coastal communities with some protection from storm-generated waves. In their global
8 analysis of the value of ecosystem services, Costanza *et al.* (1997) estimated that the value of
9 coastal marine ecosystem services was over one-third of all terrestrial and marine ecosystem
10 services combined (\$12.5 of \$33 trillion). Despite their value, coastal ecosystems and the
11 services they provide are becoming increasingly vulnerable to human pressures, and
12 management of coastal resources and human impacts generally is insufficient or ineffective
13 (Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, 2005).

14
15 As a result of coastal and shore-based human activities, marine ecosystems are exposed to a long
16 list of threats and stressors, including overexploitation of living marine resources, pollution,
17 redistribution of sediments, and habitat damage and destruction. There is an equally long list of
18 regulatory responses, including management of fisheries for sustainability, restricting ocean
19 dumping, reducing loads of nutrients and contaminants, controlling dredge-and-fill operations,
20 managing vessel traffic to reduce large-vessel groundings, and so on. These regulations are
21 managed by coastal states and the federal government, with state jurisdiction extending three
22 nautical miles (nm) offshore (9 nm in the Gulf of Mexico) and federal waters (the U.S. Exclusive
23 Economic Zone, or U.S. EEZ) on out to 200 nm or the edge of the continental shelf. The total
24 area of the U.S. EEZ exceeds the total landmass of the coterminous United States by about one-
25 half (Pew Ocean Commission, 2003).

26
27 Broad-scale protections in the U.S. EEZ cover a wide range of types of marine ecosystems, from
28 low to high latitudes and across the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. Shallow areas of these systems
29 share basic features in the form of biologically generated habitats: temperate kelp forests and salt
30 marshes, tropical coral reefs and mangroves, and seagrass beds throughout. These habitats are
31 fundamental to ecosystem structure and function and support a range of different community
32 types (Bertness, Gaines, and Hay, 2001). In addition, there are significant deep-water coral
33 formations about which we are just starting to increase our understanding (Rogers, 1999;
34 Watling and Risk, 2002).

35
36 Embedded within the general protections of the U.S. EEZ are hundreds of federal marine
37 protected areas (MPAs) that are designed to provide place-based management at “special” places
38 (Barr, 2004) and other areas that have been identified as meriting protective actions. The term
39 “marine protected area” has been used in many ways (*e.g.*, Kelleher, Bleakley, and Wells, 1995;
40 Agardy, 1997; Palumbi, 2001; National Research Council, 2001; Agardy *et al.*, 2003). We use
41 the following definition: “Marine protected area” means any area of the marine environment that
42 has been reserved by federal, state, territorial, tribal, or local laws or regulations to provide
43 lasting protection for part or all of the natural and cultural resources therein (Executive Order

1 13158, quoted in National Center for Marine Protected Areas, 2006). It is important to
2 emphasize at the onset that MPAs are managed across a wide range of approaches and degrees of
3 protection (Wooninck and Bertrand, 2004; National Center for Marine Protected Areas, 2006).
4 At the highly protective end of the spectrum are fully protected (no-take) marine reserves (Sobel
5 and Dahlgren, 2004). These reserves eliminate fishing and other forms of resource extraction and
6 enable some degree of recovery of exploited populations and restoration of ecosystem structure
7 and function, generally within relatively small areas. It is also important to highlight at the onset
8 that management of waters surrounding MPAs is critically important both to the effectiveness of
9 the MPAs themselves as well as to the overall resilience of larger marine systems.

10
11 Federal MPAs have been established by the Department of the Interior (National Park Service
12 and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service) and the Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and
13 Atmospheric Administration (National Marine Fisheries Service, National Estuarine Research
14 Reserve System, and National Marine Sanctuary Program) (Table 8.1). A 2000 executive order
15 established the National Center for Marine Protected Areas (<http://mpa.gov/>) to strengthen and
16 expand a national system of MPAs. The total area of MPAs within the U.S. EEZ is miniscule,
17 and an even smaller area lies within fully protected marine reserves (Table 8.2). Only 3.4% of
18 the U.S. EEZ lies within fully protected marine reserves, with most of this area due to the 2006
19 Presidential proclamation that designated the Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian
20 Islands) Marine National Monument; excluding the Monument reduces the percentage to 0.05%.

21
22 Manifestations of climate change are strengthening (IPCC, 2007b) against a background of long-
23 standing alterations to ecological structure and function of marine ecosystems caused by fisheries
24 exploitation, pollution, habitat degradation and destruction, and other factors (Pauly *et al.*, 1998;
25 Jackson *et al.*, 2001; Pew Ocean Commission, 2003; U.S. Commission on Ocean Policy, 2004).
26 Nowhere is the stress of elevated sea surface temperatures more dramatically expressed than in
27 coral reefs, where local-scale coral bleaching has occurred in the Eastern Pacific and Florida for
28 more than two decades (Glynn, 1991; Causey, 2001; Obura, Causey, and Church, 2006). Impacts
29 of climate variability and change in temperate ecosystems have not been as dramatic as coral
30 bleaching. Interestingly, the combined effects of climate change, regime shifts, and El Niño-
31 Southern Oscillation events (ENSOs) can strongly affect kelp forests (Paine, Tegner, and
32 Johnson, 1998; Steneck *et al.*, 2002), but apparently not associated communities (Halpern and
33 Cottenie, 2007).

34
35 The purpose of this chapter is to examine adaptation options for marine protected areas in the
36 context of climate change. We will focus on the 14 MPAs that compose the National Marine
37 Sanctuary Program (Table 8.3, Fig. 8.1) because they encompass a wide range of ecosystem
38 types and are the only U.S. MPAs managed under specific enabling legislation (U.S. Congress,
39 2007). The National Marine Sanctuary Program has explicit approaches to and goals of MPA
40 management, which simplify discussion of existing MPA management and how it may be
41 adapted to climate change.

42
43
44
45 **Figure 8.1.** Locations of the 14 MPAs that compose the National Marine Sanctuary
46 System (National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2006c).

1
2 The chapter provides background information about the historical context and origins of MPAs,
3 with National Marine Sanctuaries highlighted as an example of effectively managed MPAs
4 (Kelleher, Bleakley, and Wells, 1995; Agardy, 1997). MPAs are managed by several federal
5 organizations other than the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) (Table
6 8.1), but it is beyond the scope of this chapter to cover all entities. National Marine Sanctuaries
7 were selected to illustrate adaptation options for MPAs that apply broadly with respect to major
8 anthropogenic and climate change stressors.

9
10 It is also beyond the scope of this chapter to cover issues concerning marine ecosystems from
11 tropical to polar climates. This chapter highlights coral reef ecosystems, which have already
12 shown widespread and dramatic responses to oceanic warming and additional global and local
13 stressors. Mass coral reef bleaching events became worldwide in 1998 and have resulted in
14 extensive mortality of reef-building corals (Wilkinson, 1998; 2000; 2002; Turgeon *et al.*, 2002;
15 Wilkinson, 2004; Wadell, 2005). There now exists a substantial and rapidly growing body of
16 research on impacts of climate change on corals (such as bleaching) and coral reef ecosystems
17 (*e.g.*, Smith and Buddemeier, 1992; Glynn, 1993; Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Wilkinson, 2004;
18 Buddemeier, Kleypas, and Aronson, 2004; Donner *et al.*, 2005; Phinney *et al.*, 2006; Berkelmans
19 and van Oppen, 2006). Climate change stressors including effects of ocean acidification on
20 carbonate chemistry (Kleypas *et al.*, 1999; Soto, 2001; The Royal Society, 2005; Caldeira and
21 Wickett, 2005) will be reviewed later in this chapter. Management approaches to coral reef
22 ecosystems in response to mass bleaching and/or climate change have also received some
23 attention (*e.g.*, Salm and Coles, 2001; Hughes *et al.*, 2003; Hansen, Biringer, and Hoffman,
24 2003; West and Salm, 2003; Bellwood *et al.*, 2004; Wooldridge *et al.*, 2005; Marshall and
25 Schuttenberg, 2006a; 2006b).

26
27 Climate-change stressors in and ecological responses of colder-water marine ecosystems only
28 partially overlap those of warmer-water and tropical marine ecosystems (McCarthy *et al.*, 2001;
29 Kennedy *et al.*, 2002). The Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary is included as a
30 temperate-zone case study to contrast with case studies of tropical coral reef ecosystems from the
31 Florida Keys to Hawaii to Australia, which differ in extent of no-take protection.

32 **8.1.2 Historical Context and Origins of National Marine Sanctuaries and Other Types of** 33 **Marine Protected Areas**

34 **8.1.2.1 Mounting Environmental Concerns and Congressional Actions**

35 In 1972 the United States acknowledged the dangers and threats of uncontrolled industrial and
36 urban growth and their impacts on coastal and marine habitats through the passage of a number
37 of Congressional acts that focused on conservation of threatened coastal and ocean resources.
38 The Water Pollution Control Act addressed the nation's threatened water supply and coastal
39 pollution. The Marine Mammal Protection Act imposed a five-year ban on killing whales, seals,
40 sea otters, manatees, and other marine mammals. The Coastal Zone Management Act provided a
41 framework for federal funding of state coastal zone management plans that created a nationwide
42 system of estuarine reserves. A final environmental bill that focused on ocean health, the Marine
43 Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act of 1972, established a system of marine protected areas
44 —National Marine Sanctuaries (NMS)—administered by NOAA (Fig. 8.2).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45

Figure 8.2. Timeline of the designation of the national marine sanctuaries in the National Marine Sanctuary Program (National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2006a).

8.1.2.2 Types of Federal MPAs and Focus on National Marine Sanctuaries

In addition to the 13 national marine sanctuaries and one marine national monument, there are hundreds of marine managed areas (MMAs) under other, sometimes overlapping jurisdictions (Table 8.2) (National Research Council, 2001; National Center for Marine Protected Areas, 2006). The National Park System, administered by the National Park Service of the Department of the Interior, includes more than 70 ocean sites (Davis, 2004). Certain national parks such as Everglades (founded in 1947), Biscayne (founded in 1968 as Biscayne National Monument), and Dry Tortugas National Parks (founded in 1935 as Fort Jefferson National Monument) have much longer histories of functioning as MPAs than the 35-year history of National Marine Sanctuaries. The National Marine Sanctuary Program and National Park Service have collaborated on ocean stewardship for a number of years (Barr, 2004). The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, also under the Department of the Interior, manages more than 100 national wildlife refuges that include marine ecosystems (Table 8.2). In some cases, jurisdictions overlap. For example, there are four national wildlife refuges within the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary (Keller and Causey, 2005), three of which cover large areas of nearshore waters (Fig. 8.3).

Figure 8.3. Map of the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary. The 1990 designation did not include the Tortugas Ecological Reserve located at the western end of the sanctuary, which was implemented in 2001. The Key Largo NMS corresponded to the Existing Management Area (EMA) just offshore of the John Pennekamp Coral Reef State Park; the Looe Key NMS corresponded to the EMA surrounding the Looe Key Sanctuary Preservation Area and Research Only Area (National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, 2007d).

NOAA’s National Marine Fisheries Service has jurisdiction over a large number of fishery management areas (Table 8.2). Collectively, these areas are more than an order of magnitude greater in size than all the other MMAs combined, but with a very small area under no-take protection (Table 8.2). NOAA also administers the National Estuarine Research Reserve System, which is a partnership program with coastal states that includes 27 sites.

This chapter is focused on NOAA’s National Marine Sanctuary Program (NMSP), because it is dedicated to place-based protection and management of marine resources at nationally significant locations and has gained international recognition over the years (Barr, 2004) (Fig. 8.4). The principles of adaptation of MPA management to climate change (*i.e.*, institutional responses) that are identified will be broadly applicable to MPAs under other jurisdictions and forms of management, though institutional responses to adaptation likely will differ among agencies responsible for resource management (Holling, 1995; McClanahan, Polunin, and Done, 2002). As the only federal program for the management of MPAs, the NMSP is in a unique

1 position to respond to challenges and recommendations in reports by the U.S. Commission on
2 Ocean Policy (U.S. Commission on Ocean Policy, 2004) and Pew Oceans Commission (Pew
3 Ocean Commission, 2003). Both reports encourage the use of ecosystem-based management,
4 which is one of the hallmarks of the NMSP.

5
6
7
8 **Figure 8.4.** Organizational chart of the National Marine Sanctuary Program (NOAA
9 National Ocean Service, 2006).

10 **8.1.2.3 The National Marine Sanctuary Program**

11 The NMSP was established to identify, designate, and manage ocean, coastal, and Great Lakes
12 resources of special national significance to protect their ecological and cultural integrity for the
13 use and enjoyment of current and future generations. In addition to natural resources within
14 national marine sanctuaries, NOAA’s Maritime Heritage Program is committed to preserving
15 historical, cultural, and archaeological resources (National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2006b).

16
17 The inclusion of consumptive human activities as a major part of the management programs in
18 national marine sanctuaries distinguishes them from other federal or state resource protection
19 programs. Sanctuaries are established for the long-term public benefit, use, and enjoyment, both
20 recreationally and commercially. However, it is critical that sanctuary management policies,
21 practices, and initiatives ensure that human activities in sanctuaries are compatible with long-
22 term protection of sanctuary resources.

23
24 Thirteen national marine sanctuaries and one marine national monument, representing a wide
25 variety of ocean environments as well as one cultural heritage site in the Great Lakes, have been
26 established since 1975 (Table 8.3; Fig. 8.1). The national marine sanctuaries encompass a wide
27 range of temperate and tropical environments: moderately deep banks, coral reef-seagrass-
28 mangrove systems, whale migration corridors, deep sea canyons, and underwater archaeological
29 sites. The sites range in size from 0.66 km² in Fagatele Bay, American Samoa, to more than
30 360,000 km² in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (Table 8.3), the largest marine protected area
31 in the world.

32
33 The NMSP has implemented a regional approach to managing the system of sanctuaries
34 (National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2006c). Four regions have been established to improve
35 support for the sites and to enhance an integrated ecosystem-based approach to management of
36 sanctuaries. An important function of the regions is to provide value-added services to the sites,
37 while taking a broader integrated approach to management. The four regions are the Pacific
38 Islands; West Coast; Northeast-Great Lakes; and the Southeast Atlantic, Gulf of Mexico, and
39 Caribbean. Boundaries for these regions are focused on physical and biological connectivity
40 among sites and not on political boundaries.

1 **8.1.3 Enabling Legislation**

2 **8.1.3.1 Enabling Legislation for Different Types of MPAs**

3 The U.S. National Park System Organic Act established the National Parks System in 1916.
4 Several parks and national monuments have marine waters within their boundaries or are
5 primarily marine; they were the earliest federal MPAs. Similarly, a large number of national
6 wildlife refuges function as MPAs (Table 8.1) under the authority of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife
7 Service. The 1966 National Wildlife Refuge System Administration Act was the first
8 comprehensive legislation after decades of designations of federal wildlife reservations and
9 refuges (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 2007).

10
11 NOAA's National Marine Fisheries Service implements and manages more than 200 fishery
12 management areas (Table 8.1) under several different statutory authorities, with four major
13 categories: Federal Fisheries Management Zones, Federal Fisheries Habitat Conservation Zones,
14 Federal Threatened and Endangered Species Protected Areas, and Federal Marine Mammal
15 Protected Areas (National Center for Marine Protected Areas, 2006). The purposes of these
16 fishery management areas include rebuilding and maintaining sustainable fisheries, conserving
17 and restoring marine habitats, and promoting the recovery of protected species. NOAA's
18 National Estuarine Research Reserve System was established by the Coastal Zone Management
19 Act of 1972 (U.S. Congress, 1972a). This system consists of partnerships between NOAA and
20 coastal states to protect habitat, offer educational opportunities, and provide areas for research.
21 At this time Congress also established a system of national marine sanctuaries.

22 **8.1.3.2 The Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act**

23 The Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act (1972b) established both the NMSP and a
24 regulatory framework for ocean dumping, which was a major issue at the time. In Title III of the
25 Act, later to be known as the National Marine Sanctuaries Act (NMSA), the Secretary of
26 Commerce received the authority to designate national marine sanctuaries for the purpose of
27 preserving or restoring nationally significant areas for their conservation, recreational,
28 ecological, or esthetic values. The NMSA is reauthorized every four to five years, allowing for
29 updating and adaptation as necessary.

30 **8.1.3.3 Legislation Designating Particular National Marine Sanctuaries**

31 On November 16, 1990, the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary and Protection Act
32 (FKNMS Act), P.L. 101-605, set out as a note to 16 U.S.C. 1433, became law. The FKNMS Act
33 designated an area of waters and submerged lands, including the living and nonliving resources
34 within those waters, surrounding most of the Florida Keys (Fig. 8.3). This was the first national
35 marine sanctuary to be designated by an act of Congress.

36
37 The FKNMS Act immediately addressed two major concerns of the residents of the Florida
38 Keys. First, it placed an instant prohibition on oil drilling, including mineral and hydrocarbon
39 leasing, exploration, development, or production, within the sanctuary. Second, the Act created
40 an internationally recognized area to be avoided (ATBA) for ships greater than 50 m in length,
41 with special designated access corridors into ports (Fig. 8.3). The ATBA provides a buffer zone
42 along the coral reef tract to protect it from oil spills and groundings by large vessels.

1
2 The FKNMS Act also called for a comprehensive, long-term strategy to protect and preserve the
3 Florida Keys marine environment. The sanctuary seeks to protect marine resources by educating
4 and interpreting for the public the Florida Keys marine environment, and by managing those uses
5 that result in resource degradation. The greatest challenge to protecting the natural resources of
6 the Keys and the economy they support is preserving water quality. To address this challenge,
7 the FKNMS Act brought together various agencies to develop a comprehensive Water Quality
8 Protection Program (WQPP). The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) is the lead
9 agency in developing and implementing the WQPP, the purpose of which is to “recommend
10 priority corrective actions and compliance schedules addressing point and nonpoint sources of
11 pollution to restore and maintain the chemical, physical, and biological integrity of the sanctuary,
12 including restoration and maintenance of a balanced, indigenous population of corals, shellfish,
13 fish, and wildlife, and recreational activities in and on the water” (U.S. Department of
14 Commerce, 1996).

15
16 The FKNMS Act called for an Interagency Core Group to be established to compile management
17 issues confronting the sanctuary as identified by the public at scoping meetings, from written
18 comments, and from surveys distributed by NOAA. The Core Group consisted of representatives
19 from several divisions of NOAA, National Park Service, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, EPA,
20 U.S Coast Guard, Florida Governor’s Office, Florida Department of Environmental Protection,
21 Florida Department of Community Affairs, South Florida Water Management District, and
22 Monroe County.

23
24 The FKNMS Act also called for the public to be a part of the planning process using a Sanctuary
25 Advisory Council (SAC) to aid in the development of a comprehensive management plan. A 22-
26 member SAC was selected by the Governor of Florida and the Secretary of Commerce. The
27 council consisted of members of various user groups; local, state, and federal agencies;
28 scientists; educators; environmental groups; and private citizens.

29
30 It quickly became evident that the Congressional option to designate national marine sanctuaries
31 would expedite the designation process. In 1992 four other national marine sanctuaries were
32 designated by Congress, including the Flower Garden Banks, Monterey Bay, Hawaiian Islands
33 Humpback Whale, and Stellwagen Bank (Fig. 8.1). These designations were very similar to the
34 FKNMS Act in that they laid out a process by which sanctuary management should proceed.

35 **8.1.3.4 Recent Proclamation of the Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian Islands)**
36 **Marine National Monument**

37 In 2000 President William J. Clinton signed Executive Orders that created the Northwestern
38 Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) Coral Reef Ecosystem Reserve. The orders also initiated a process to
39 designate the waters of the NWHI as a national marine sanctuary. Scoping meetings for the
40 proposed sanctuary were held in 2002. In 2005 Hawaii Governor Linda Lingle signed regulations
41 establishing a state marine refuge in the nearshore waters of the NWHI (out to 3 nautical miles,
42 except Midway Atoll) that excluded all extractive uses of the region, except those permitted for
43 research or other purposes that benefited management. In 2006, after substantial public comment
44 in support of strong protections for the area, President George W. Bush issued Presidential
45 Proclamation 8031, creating the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands Marine National Monument.

1 The President’s actions followed Governor Lingle’s lead and immediately afforded the NWHI
2 the highest form of marine environmental protection as the world’s largest MPA (360,000 km²).
3 Administrative jurisdiction over the islands and marine waters is shared by NOAA/NMSP, U.S.
4 Fish and Wildlife Service, and the State of Hawaii.

5 **8.1.4 Interpretation of Goals**

6 The mission of the NMSP is to identify, protect, conserve, and enhance natural and cultural
7 resources, values, and qualities. The NMSP has developed a draft strategic plan with a set of
8 goals (Box 8.1) to provide a bridge between the broad mandates of the NMSA and daily
9 operations at the site level.

10
11 At the site level, management and annual operating plans for each national marine sanctuary and
12 the marine national monument identify specific plans and tasks for day-to-day management of
13 the 14 sites. Sanctuaries work closely with their stakeholder Sanctuary Advisory Councils in the
14 processes of developing and revising management plans. Sanctuary staff work with council
15 members to form working groups to analyze each of the action plans that comprise a
16 management plan. There are public scoping meetings to ensure the opportunity for participation
17 by the public. The NMSA stipulates that plans should be reviewed and revised on a five-year
18 time frame, and various sanctuaries are at different phases of this process (Table 8.3). Three
19 Central California sanctuaries are undergoing a joint management plan review, some revisions
20 have been completed, and some are nearing completion. Examples of management plans are
21 provided in the case studies that appear later in this chapter.

22 **8.2 Current Status of Management System**

23 **8.2.1 Key Ecosystem Characteristics on Which Goals Depend**

24 In keeping with the goals of the National Marine Sanctuary Program (Box 8.1), sanctuaries
25 within U.S. waters are generally set aside for the preservation of biological or maritime heritage
26 resources. Sites such as the Florida Keys and Channel Islands NMS are of the former, while the
27 Monitor NMS is of the latter. Sites designated to protect marine biological resources have their
28 primary focus on maintaining biodiversity or preserving key species and are therefore directly
29 related to NMSP Goals 1 and 4. These sites are also the ones most in need of management in
30 response to climate change.

31 **8.2.1.1 Biodiversity**

32 The extraordinary biodiversity of tropical and subtropical coral reef sites is well recognized (see
33 the case studies in sections 8.4.1, 8.4.2, and 8.4.3), but recent findings underscore the fact that
34 high biodiversity is also characteristic of many temperate sanctuaries. For example, the recent
35 discovery of deep, temperate corals in the Olympic Coast NMS raises the possibility that benthic
36 invertebrate and associated fish diversity is significantly higher than previously thought. Though
37 receiving substantially less attention from the scientific community than their tropical
38 counterparts, subtidal temperate reefs may be no less important in promoting species diversity
39 and enhancing production (Jonsson *et al.*, 2004; Roberts and Hirshfield, 2004). In the past these
40 reefs have been overlooked and under-studied primarily because of accessibility: they often

1 occur in deeper or lower-visibility waters. Recently and primarily because of greater accessibility
2 to deep water ecosystems, the importance of temperate reefs as critical habitat has begun to be
3 fully recognized (*e.g.*, Reed, 2002; Jonsson *et al.*, 2004; Roberts and Hirshfield, 2004; Roberts,
4 Wheeler, and Freiwald, 2006). These reefs may host an array of undescribed species, including
5 endemic gorgonians, corals, hydroids and sponges (Koslow *et al.*, 2001; Jonsson *et al.*, 2004).
6 Furthermore, the value of these offshore reefs to fisheries has long been recognized by
7 commercial and recreational fisherman. Fish tend to aggregate on deep-sea reefs (Husebø *et al.*,
8 2002), and scientific evidence supports the contention by commercial fishermen that damage to
9 temperate reefs affects both the abundance and distribution of fish (Fosså, Mortensen, and
10 Furevik, 2002; Krieger and Wing, 2002).

11 **8.2.1.2 Key Species**

12 Key species within sanctuary boundaries may be resident as well as migratory and may or may
13 not represent species that are extracted by fishing (*i.e.*, NMSP Goal 5; Box 8.1). For example,
14 three adjacent sanctuaries off the California coast—Cordell Banks, Gulf of the Farallones, and
15 Monterey Bay—are frequented by protected species of blue (*Balaenoptera musculus*) and
16 humpback (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) whales. In contrast, during the spring of each year king
17 mackerel (*Scomberomorus cavalla*) migrate through Gray’s Reef NMS off the coast of Georgia
18 and represent a vibrant and sought-after recreational fishery. Under various climate change
19 scenarios, management strategies employed to protect these key species may differ. Furthermore,
20 key species within sanctuaries may not be limited to subtidal marine organisms but, depending
21 on the sanctuary, may also include intertidal species (*e.g.*, *Mytilus californianus* in Monterey Bay
22 NMS) or even sea and shorebirds. It has been suggested that these intertidal species are more
23 likely to be stressed by climate change and may serve as a bellwether for change in other
24 ecosystems (Helmuth, 2002). In all sanctuaries protected for biological reasons, biodiversity may
25 be affected by climate change and must be managed to meet sanctuary goals. This topic is
26 addressed by case studies presented later in this chapter.

27 **8.2.1.3 Habitat Complexity**

28 National marine sanctuary sites, especially subtidally, are characterized by complexity of habitat
29 that is either biologically or geologically structured. This habitat complexity is an invaluable
30 resource supporting biodiversity. Subtidal habitats in sanctuaries that are biologically structured
31 are represented most notably by temperate kelp forests and tropical corals reefs, whereas
32 geologically structured habitats are centered around sea mounts and rocky outcrops. The
33 topographic complexity of geologically structured habitats, especially in temperate systems, is
34 often enhanced by settlement and growth of sessile benthic invertebrates such as sponges,
35 arborescent bryozoans, and ascidians (*e.g.*, Grays Reef NMS).

36
37 Habitat complexity is a key ecosystem characteristic that must be protected in order to achieve
38 NMSP Goals 1 and 4 (Box 8.1). Biologically structured habitats, rather than geologically
39 structured, are probably most susceptible to degradation resulting from climate change. As
40 indicated in section 8.2.2 (*Stressors of Concern*), excess CO₂ absorbed by sea water lowers pH
41 and results in reduced calcification rates in organisms that provide complex structure, such as
42 arborescent bryozoans, bivalves, coralline algae, and temperate and tropical corals (Hoegh-
43 Guldborg, 1999; Kleypas *et al.*, 1999; Kleypas and Langdon, 2006). Non-calcifying biological

1 structures, such as kelp, as well as all shallow water structures are also at risk primarily from
2 changes in storm activity, ocean warming, and reduced upwelling associated with climate change
3 (see Case Study: Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary).

4 **8.2.1.4 Trophic Cascades**

5 In addition to biodiversity and habitat complexity, trophic links between the benthos and water
6 column help maintain ecosystem integrity within sanctuaries. In keeping with NMSP Goal 5
7 (Box 8.1) regarding human use, the strength of these benthic-pelagic linkages must be
8 considered when designating fishing restrictions (Wahle, Grober-Dunsmore, and Wooninck,
9 2006; Grober-Dunsmore, Wooninck, and Wahle, In Press). Fishing regulations often involve
10 removal of top predators and have direct impacts on trophic cascades that are defined as: 1)
11 having top-down control of community structure and 2) having conspicuous indirect effects on
12 two or more links distant from the primary one (Frank *et al.*, 2005). The consequences of
13 ignoring past experiences regarding these trophic cascades could be deleterious to sanctuary
14 goals (Hughes *et al.*, 2005). As highlighted in a recent workshop sponsored by the MPA Science
15 Institute, however, knowledge in this critical area is lacking (Wahle, Grober-Dunsmore, and
16 Wooninck, 2006). Facilitating a better understanding of trophic cascades by supporting scientific
17 inquiry into this topic would do much to enhance understanding of ecosystem processes in
18 marine sanctuaries (NMSP Goal 4). It may also provide insight into how these processes might
19 be impacted by climate change.

20 **8.2.1.5 Connectivity**

21 The open nature of marine ecosystems means that they do not function, and likewise should not
22 be managed, in isolation (Palumbi, 2003). Connectivity among marine ecosystems and across
23 biological communities contributes to maintaining the biological integrity of all marine
24 environments (Kaufman *et al.*, 2004). While NMS boundaries are well defined, the separation
25 between ecosystems and communities is blurred because of export and import of resources. At
26 the broadest scale these linkages are manifested as sources and sinks of nutrients and recruits
27 (*e.g.*, Crowder *et al.*, 2000).

28 **8.2.1.6 Nutrient Fluxes**

29 While excess nutrients can lead to degradation of offshore ecosystems (Rabalais, Turner, and
30 Wiseman Jr, 2002), it is also hypothesized that the function of offshore ecosystems is dependent
31 on nutrients that have their origins in upland productivity. Estuaries are thought to represent the
32 conduit through which dissolved and particulate material from the continent passes to offshore
33 areas through rivers (Gattuso, Frankignoulle, and Wollast, 1998). This “outwelling”
34 characteristic was first proposed by Odum (1969) and has since been applied to mangroves and
35 seagrasses (Lee, 1995). The direct and indirect trophic links that exist between these ecosystems
36 are thought to be critical to ecosystem function and highlight the importance of assessing the
37 downstream effects that upland and nearshore activities have on increasing and decreasing
38 nutrient availability offshore. In areas where climate change alters historical rainfall patterns,
39 concomitant alteration of the supply of nutrients to offshore ecosystems might also occur.

1 **8.2.1.7 Larval Dispersal and Recruitment**

2 One of the strengths of the NMSP is protection of entire ecosystems rather than management of
3 single species. As such, a key characteristic of these ecosystems rests in their ability to serve as
4 sources of recruits for both fish and invertebrate species and as foci for fish aggregations. Most
5 benthic marine invertebrates and fish species have a planktonic larval stage that results from
6 spawned gametes (Pechenik, 1999). Successful recruitment of planktonic larvae to the benthos
7 depends on processes that function at multiple spatial scales in contrast to non-planktonic larvae,
8 which generally recruit at a small spatial scale. At the broadest scale, hydrodynamic forces may
9 disperse passive larvae long distances, potentially delivering them to suitable settlement sites far
10 from the source population (Williams, Wolanski, and Andrews, 1984; Lee *et al.*, 1992).

11 Alternatively, complex, three-dimensional secondary flows resulting from barriers, such as
12 headlands, islands, and reefs, as well as cyclonic motion can retain passive larvae within
13 estuaries, around islands, or within ocean basins, resulting in more settlement to natal
14 populations (Black, Moran, and Hammond, 1991; Lee *et al.*, 1992; Black *et al.*, 1995; Lugo-
15 Fernandez *et al.*, 2001).

16
17 Because of their small size and limited swimming ability, invertebrate larvae may be passively
18 dispersed at a broad spatial scale (Denny, 1988; Mullineaux and Butman, 1991). Yet larvae of
19 many marine invertebrates, including coral planulae, use swimming behavior, stimulated by
20 chemical or physical cues, to control their position within the water column, thereby increasing
21 the probability that they will be transported to suitable settlement substrates (Scheltema, 1986;
22 Raimondi and Morse, 2000; Gleason, Edmunds, and Gates, 2006; Levin, 2006). In contrast,
23 researchers continue to be surprised by the swimming and sensory capabilities of fish larvae
24 (Stobutzki and Bellwood, 1997; Tolimieri, Jeffs, and Montgomery, 2000; Leis and McCormick,
25 2002; Leis, Carson-Ewart, and Webley, 2002; Lecchini *et al.*, 2005; Lecchini, Planes, and
26 Galzin, 2005). That these larvae orient in the water column and swim directionally either at
27 hatching or soon thereafter may explain recent evidence for localized recruitment (Jones *et al.*,
28 1999; Swearer *et al.*, 1999; Taylor and Hellberg, 2003; Cowen, Paris, and Srinivasan, 2006).

29
30 While connectivity among ecosystems and among biological communities in terms of both
31 nutrients and recruits is an important feature of marine sanctuaries, boundaries of protected areas
32 rarely encompass the continuum of habitats (*e.g.*, rivers to estuaries to mangroves to seagrasses
33 to reefs) or the maximum dispersal distances of critical species. Recent information obtained for
34 dispersal of both fish and invertebrates suggests that sanctuaries must be managed for both self-
35 recruitment and larval subsidies from upstream (Roberts, 1997b; Hughes *et al.*, 2005; Cowen,
36 Paris, and Srinivasan, 2006; Steneck, 2006). Effective exchange of offspring is facilitated by
37 MPA networks that are in close proximity [10–50 km apart according to Roberts *et al.* (2001)].
38 This would also allow larval exchange among populations and also buffer these populations from
39 climate-driven changes in current regimes. The NMSP should be a critical player in the
40 development of such an MPA network. NMSP Goal 2 provides for the expansion of the nation-
41 wide system of MPAs and encourages cooperation among MPAs administered under a range of
42 programs.

1 **8.2.2 Stressors of Concern**

2 Population growth and coastal development increasingly affect U.S. MPAs; an estimated 153
3 million people (53% of the U.S. population) lived in coastal counties in 2003, and that number
4 continues to rise (World Resources Institute, 1996; Hinrichsen, Robey, and Upadhyay, 1998;
5 National Safety Council, 1998; World Resources Institute, 2000; National Ocean Service, 2000;
6 U.S. Census Bureau, 2001; Crossett *et al.*, 2004). Growing human impacts are compounded by
7 the fact that, in contrast to most terrestrial conservation areas, MPAs lack fences or other
8 barricades and are subjected to anthropogenic stressors (*e.g.*, coastal development, pollution,
9 fishing and aquaculture, habitat degradation) that originate externally. MPA management has
10 focused on minimizing impacts of these existing anthropogenic stressors. The addition of climate
11 change may exacerbate effects of existing stressors and require new or modified management
12 approaches.

13
14 The purpose of this section is: 1) to outline major stressors on marine organisms and
15 communities resulting from climate change and 2) to introduce ways in which major
16 “traditional” stressors may interact with climate change stressors.

17
18 There are excellent, extensive reviews of impacts of climate change on marine organisms and
19 communities (*e.g.*, Scavia *et al.*, 2002; Walther *et al.*, 2002; Goldberg and Wilkinson, 2004;
20 Harley *et al.*, 2006). By contrast, the scientific knowledge required to reach general conclusions
21 related to the impact of multiple stressors at community and ecosystem levels is for the most part
22 absent. Thus, information concerning interactions among stressors is limited.

23 **8.2.2.1 Direct Climate Change Stressors**

24 **Ocean Warming**

25 According to Bindoff *et al.* (2007), there is high confidence that an average warming of 0.1°C
26 has occurred in the 0–700 m depth layer of the ocean between 1961 and 2003. Increasing ocean
27 temperatures, especially near the surface, affect physiological processes in organisms ranging
28 from enzyme reactions to reproductive timing (Fields *et al.*, 1993; Roessig *et al.*, 2004; Harley *et al.*,
29 2006). The historical stability of ocean temperatures makes many marine species sensitive to
30 thermal perturbations just a few degrees higher than those experienced over evolutionary time
31 (Wainwright, 1994). However, it is not always intuitive which species might be most intolerant
32 of temperature increases. For example, studies on porcelain crabs (*Petrolisthes*) and intertidal
33 snails (*Tegula*) show that individuals in the mid-intertidal are closer to upper temperature limits
34 and have less capacity to acclimate to temperature perturbations than subtidal congeners in
35 temperature-stable conditions (Tomanek and Somero, 1999; Stillman, 2003; Harley *et al.*, 2006).

36
37 What is clear is that increasing sea temperatures will continue to influence processes such as
38 foraging, growth, and larval duration and dispersal, with ultimate impacts on the geographic
39 ranges of species. In fact, poleward latitudinal shifts in some zooplankton, fish and intertidal
40 invertebrate communities have already been observed along the California coast and in the North
41 Atlantic (reviewed in Walther *et al.*, 2002). Within marine communities, these temperature
42 changes may result in new species assemblages and biological interactions that affect ecological
43 processes such as productivity, nutrient fluxes, energy flow, and trophic webs (Barry *et al.*, 1995;
44 Roessig *et al.*, 2004; Precht and Aronson, 2004; O'Connor *et al.*, 2007). Species that are unable

1 to shift geographic ranges (perhaps due to physical barriers) or compete with other species for
2 resources may face local—and potentially global—extinction. Conversely, some species may
3 find open niches and dominate regions because of release from competition or predation.
4

5 Impacts at the ecosystem or community level are even more difficult to predict. For example,
6 warmer waters stimulate increases in population sizes of the mid-intertidal sea star, *Pisaster*
7 *ochraceus*, and its per capita consumption rates of mussels (Sanford, 1999). Continued warming
8 may enable *P. ochraceus* to clear large sections of mussel beds, indirectly affecting hundreds of
9 species associated with these formations (Harley *et al.*, 2006). How such an outcome impacts
10 trophic links and other biological processes within this community is not clear.
11

12 The latest reports from the IPCC (2007a; 2007b) state that temperature increases over the last 50
13 years are nearly twice those for the last 100 years, with projections that temperature will rise 2–
14 4.5°C, largely caused by a doubling of atmospheric carbon dioxide emissions. Increases in
15 seawater surface temperature of about 1–3°C are likely to cause more frequent coral bleaching
16 events that cause widespread mortality unless thermal adaptation or acclimatization by corals
17 occurs (IPCC, 2007b). However, the ability of corals to adapt or acclimatize to increasing
18 seawater temperature is largely unknown (Berkelmans and van Oppen, 2006) and remains a
19 research topic of paramount importance.
20

21 Consequences of coral bleaching, during which corals lose their symbiotic algae, depend on the
22 severity and duration of the bleaching event and range from minimal affects on growth and
23 reproduction to widespread mortality. Coral bleaching at the ecosystem level is a relatively
24 recent phenomenon, first receiving widespread attention in 1987 when abnormally high summer
25 seawater surface temperatures throughout the Caribbean resulted in a mass bleaching event
26 (Williams, Goenaga, and Vicente, 1987; Williams and Bunkley-Williams, 1990). Soon after,
27 coral reef scientists identified climate change as a major long-term threat to coral reefs (Glynn,
28 1991; Smith and Buddemeier, 1992). Ten years later, in 1997–1998, a mass bleaching event in
29 association with an ENSO event caused worldwide bleaching and coral mortality (Wilkinson,
30 1998; 2000), and in 2005 the most devastating Caribbean-wide coral bleaching event to date
31 occurred that, based on modeling, is highly unlikely to have occurred without anthropogenic
32 forcing (Donner, Knutson, and Oppenheimer, 2007). Over the last 20 years, an extensive body of
33 literature has conclusively linked anomalously high summer surface seawater temperatures as the
34 major cause of coral bleaching (Wilkinson, 1998; 2000; Fitt *et al.*, 2001; Wilkinson, 2002; U.S.
35 Climate Change Science Program and Subcommittee on Global Change Research, 2003; Donner
36 *et al.*, 2005; Donner, Knutson, and Oppenheimer, 2007), with widespread agreement that
37 continued warming—as little as 1°C warmer than the average summer maxima is sufficient—
38 will increase the severity and frequency of mass bleaching events (Smith and Buddemeier, 1992;
39 Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Hughes *et al.*, 2003; Douglas, 2003; Done and Jones, 2006).
40

41 Effects of coral reef bleaching are both biological, including lost biodiversity and other
42 ecosystem services, and economic, resulting in the decline of fisheries and tourism (Buddemeier,
43 Kleypas, and Aronson, 2004). Coral reefs affected by mass bleaching typically take decades or
44 longer to recover and sometimes may not recover at all. In general, coral reef decline throughout
45 the Caribbean region has been caused by a combination of bleaching, disease, and hurricanes
46 (Gardner *et al.*, 2003; Gardner *et al.*, 2005).

1
2 **Ocean Acidification**

3 Increased CO₂ concentrations lower oceanic pH, making it more acidic. According to the most
4 recent IPCC report, the total inorganic carbon content of the ocean increased by 118 (±19) billion
5 metric tons of carbon from 1750–1994 and continues to increase through absorption of excess
6 CO₂ (Bindoff *et al.*, 2007). Furthermore, time series data for the last 20 years show a trend of
7 decreasing pH of 0.02 pH units per decade (Bindoff *et al.*, 2007). Long-term exposures to low
8 pH (-0.7 unit) have been shown to reduce metabolic rates, growth, and survivorship of both
9 invertebrates and fishes (Michaelidis *et al.*, 2005; Shirayama and Thornton, 2005; Pane and
10 Barry, 2007), but by far the greatest threat of reducing pH is to organisms that build their
11 external skeletal material out of calcium carbonate (CaCO₃). Calcifying organisms such as sea
12 urchins, cold-water corals, coralline algae, and various plankton that reside in cooler temperate
13 waters appear to be the most threatened by acidification because CO₂ has greater solubility in
14 cooler waters (Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Kleypas *et al.*, 1999; Hughes *et al.*, 2003; Feely *et al.*,
15 2004; Kleypas and Langdon, 2006).

16
17 The response of corals and coral reefs to ocean acidification has received substantial attention,
18 and results show that lowering pH results in significant reductions in calcification rates in both
19 reef-building corals and coralline algae (Kleypas *et al.*, 1999; Feely *et al.*, 2004; Orr *et al.*, 2005;
20 Kleypas and Langdon, 2006). Declines in calcification rates of 17–35% by the year 2100 have
21 been estimated based on projected changes in the partial pressure of CO₂ (Hoegh-Guldberg,
22 1999; Kleypas *et al.*, 1999; Hughes *et al.*, 2003; Orr *et al.*, 2005). Because of the greater
23 solubility of CO₂ in cooler waters, reefs at the latitudinal margins of coral reef development (*e.g.*,
24 Florida Keys and Hawaiian Islands) may show the most rapid and dramatic response to changing
25 pH.

26
27 **Rising Sea Level**

28 During the last 100 years, global average sea level has risen an estimated 1–2 mm per year and is
29 expected to accelerate due to thermal expansion of the oceans and melting ice-sheets and glaciers
30 (Cabanes, Cazenave, and Le Provost, 2001; Albritton and Filho, 2001; Rignot and
31 Kanagaratnam, 2006; Chen, Wilson, and Tapley, 2006; Shepherd and Wingham, 2007; Bell *et*
32 *al.*, 2007; IPCC, 2007b). Rates of sea level rise at a local scale vary from -2 to 10 mm per year
33 along U.S. coastlines (Nicholls and Leatherman, 1996; Zervas, 2001; Scavia *et al.*, 2002). Low-
34 lying areas, especially intertidal zones, along the eastern and Gulf coasts are at the greatest risk
35 of damage from rising sea level (Scavia *et al.*, 2002). The consequences of sea level rise include
36 inundation of coastal areas, erosion of vulnerable shorelines, and landward shifts in species
37 distributions.

38
39 On undeveloped coasts with relatively gentle slopes, it is thought that plant communities such as
40 mangroves and *Spartina* salt marshes will move inland as sea level rises (Scavia *et al.*, 2002;
41 Harley *et al.*, 2006). In contrast, coastline development will interfere with these plant migrations.
42 As a result, wetlands may become submerged and soils may become waterlogged, resulting in
43 plant physiological stress due to chronic and intolerable elevated salinity. Marshes, mangroves
44 and dune plants are critical to the coastal environment because they produce and add nutrients to
45 the coastal systems, stabilize substrates, and serve as refuges and nurseries for many species.
46 Their depletion or loss would therefore affect nutrient flux, energy flow and essential habitat for

1 a multitude of species, with ultimate long-term impacts on biodiversity (Scavia *et al.*, 2002;
2 Galbraith *et al.*, 2002; Harley *et al.*, 2006). The projected 35–70% loss of barrier islands and
3 intertidal and sandy beach habitat over the next 100 years could also drastically reduce nesting
4 grounds for key species such as sea turtles and birds as these critical habitats disappear (Scavia *et*
5 *al.*, 2002).

6 **Climatic Variability and Ocean Circulation**

7 Natural climatic variability resulting from ocean-atmosphere interactions such as the El Niño
8 Southern Oscillation (ENSO), Pacific Decadal Oscillation (PDO), and North Atlantic
9 Oscillation/Northern Hemisphere Annular Mode (NAO/NHM) result in changes in open ocean
10 productivity, shifts in the distribution of organisms and modifications in food webs that
11 foreshadow potential consequences of accelerated climate change (*e.g.*, Mantua *et al.*, 1997;
12 McGowan *et al.*, 1998). These recurring patterns of ocean-atmosphere variability have very
13 different behaviors in time. For example, whereas ENSO events persist for 6–18 months and
14 have their major impact in the tropics, the PDO occurs over a much longer time frame of 20–30
15 years and has primary effects in the northern Pacific (Mantua *et al.*, 1997). Regardless of the
16 temporal scale and region of impact, however, these natural modes of climate variability have
17 existed historically, independent of anthropogenically driven climate change. These climate
18 phenomena may act in tandem with (or in opposition to) human-induced alterations, with
19 consequences that are difficult to predict (Philip and Van Oldenborgh, 2006).

21 Ocean-atmosphere interactions on a warming planet may also result in long-term alterations in
22 the prevailing current and upwelling patterns (Bakun, 1990; McPhaden and Zhang, 2002; Snyder
23 *et al.*, 2003; McGregor *et al.*, 2007). While at present there is no clear indication that ocean
24 circulation patterns have changed (Bindoff *et al.*, 2007), modifications could have large effects
25 within and among ecosystems through impacts on ecosystem and community connectivity in
26 terms of both nutrients and recruits (see section 8.2.1., *Key Ecosystem Characteristics Upon*
27 *Which Goals Depend*). Considering that there is evidence for warming of the Southern Ocean
28 mode waters and Upper Circumpolar Deep Waters from 1960–2000, changes in oceanic current
29 and upwelling patterns are likely in the future (Bindoff *et al.*, 2007). The direction that these
30 changes will take, however, is not evident. For example, it has been hypothesized that the greater
31 temperature differential between the land mass and ocean that will occur with climate warming
32 will increase upwelling because of stronger alongshore winds (Bakun, 1990). In contrast,
33 Gucinski, Lackey, and Spence (1990) proposed that warming at higher latitudes will reduce
34 latitudinal temperature gradients resulting in decreased wind strength and less upwelling; some
35 models show potential for Atlantic thermohaline circulation to end abruptly if high-latitude
36 waters are no longer able to sink (Stocker and Marchal, 2000).

38 **Storm Intensity**

39 Whether or not storm frequency has changed over time is not clear because of large natural
40 variability resulting from such climate drivers as the ENSO (IPCC, 2007b). However, since the
41 mid 1970s there has been a trend toward longer storm duration and greater storm intensity
42 (IPCC, 2007b). An increase in storm intensity generally has impacts on two fronts. First, it may
43 increase pulses of fresh water to coastal and near-shore habitats (see below). Second, increasing
44 storm intensity may cause physical damage to coastal ecosystems, especially those in shallow
45 water (IPCC, 2007b).

1
2 Recent hurricanes in the southern United States have caused: extensive destruction to homes and
3 businesses; altered near-shore water quality; scoured the ocean bottom; over-washed beaches;
4 produced immense amounts of marine debris (wood, metals, plastics) and pollution (household
5 hazardous wastes, pesticides, metals, oils and other toxic chemicals) from floodwaters; and
6 damaged many mangrove, marsh, and coral reef areas (Davis *et al.*, 1994; Tilmant *et al.*, 1994;
7 McCoy *et al.*, 1996; Lovelace and MacPherson, 1998; Baldwin *et al.*, 2001; U.S. Fish and
8 Wildlife Service, 2005). Even 30–60 days after the storms, some areas still experienced
9 increased turbidity, breakdown of mangrove peat soils and elevated concentrations of ammonia,
10 dissolved phosphate, and dissolved organic carbon (Davis *et al.*, 1994; Tilmant *et al.*, 1994;
11 Lovelace and MacPherson, 1998). In some instances, algal blooms from the high nutrients
12 further increased the turbidity while driving down dissolved-oxygen concentrations (*i.e.*, caused
13 eutrophication), resulting in mortalities in fish and invertebrate populations (Tilmant *et al.*, 1994;
14 Lovelace and MacPherson, 1998). Given that most climate change models project increasing
15 storm intensity as well as higher sea levels in many areas, it is evident that low-lying and shallow
16 marine ecosystems such as mangroves, salt marshes, sea grasses, and coral reefs are at greatest
17 risk of long-term damage.

18
19 **Freshwater Influx**

20 Observations indicate that changes in the amount, intensity, frequency and type of precipitation
21 are occurring worldwide (IPCC, 2007b). Consistent with observed changes in precipitation and
22 water transport in the atmosphere, large-scale trends in oceanic salinity have become evident for
23 the period 1955–1998 (Bindoff *et al.*, 2007). These trends are manifested as lowered salinities at
24 subpolar latitudes and increased salinities in shallower parts of the tropical and subtropical
25 oceans.

26
27 In addition to altering salinity in major oceanic water masses, changes in precipitation patterns
28 can have significant impacts in estuarine and other near-shore environments. For instance, in
29 regions where climate change results in elevated rainfall, increased runoff may cause greater
30 stratification of water layers within estuaries as fresh water floats out over the top of higher
31 salinity layers (Scavia *et al.*, 2002). One consequence of this stratification may be less water
32 column mixing and thus lower rates of nutrient exchange among water layers. Combining this
33 stratification effect with the shorter water residence times stemming from higher inflow (Moore
34 *et al.*, 1997) may result in significantly reduced productivity because phytoplankton populations
35 may be flushed from the system at a rate faster than they can grow and reproduce. On the other
36 hand, estuaries that are located in regions with lower rainfall may also show decreased
37 productivity because of lower nutrient influx. Thus, the relationship between precipitation and
38 marine ecosystem health is complex and difficult to predict.

39
40 Another source of fresh water is melting of polar ice (IPCC, 2007b). In the Atlantic Ocean,
41 accelerated melting of Arctic ice and the Greenland ice sheet are predicted to continue producing
42 more freshwater inputs that may alter oceanic circulation patterns (Dickson *et al.*, 2002; Curry,
43 Dickson, and Yashayaev, 2003; Curry and Mauritzen, 2005; Peterson *et al.*, 2006; Greene and
44 Pershing, 2007; Boessenkool *et al.*, 2007).

1 **8.2.2.2 Climate Change Interactions with "Traditional" Stressors of Concern**

2 **Pollution**

3 Marine water quality degradation and pollution stem primarily from land-based sources, with
4 major contributions to coastal watershed and water quality deterioration falling into two broad
5 categories: point source pollution and non-point source pollution. Point source pollution from
6 factories, sewage treatment plants, and farms often flows into nearby waters. In contrast, marine
7 non-point source pollution originates from coastal urban runoff where the bulk of the land is
8 paved or covered with buildings. These impervious surfaces prevent soils from capturing runoff,
9 resulting in the input of untreated pollutants (*e.g.*, fuels, oils, plastics, metals, insecticides,
10 antibiotics) to coastal waters. Increased terrestrial runoff due to more intense storm events
11 associated with climate change may increase land-based water pollution from both of these
12 sources.

13
14
15 Deterioration and pollution of coastal watersheds can have far-reaching effects on marine
16 ecosystems. As an example, the Gulf of Mexico "dead zone" that occurs each summer and
17 extends from the Mississippi River bird-foot delta across the Louisiana shelf and onto the upper
18 Texas coast can range from 1–125 km offshore (Rabalais, Turner, and Wiseman Jr, 2002). This
19 mass of hypoxic (low-oxygen) water has its origins in the increased nitrate flux coincident with
20 the exponential growth of fertilizer use that has occurred since the 1950s in the Mississippi River
21 basin. This hypoxia results in changes in species diversity and community structure of the
22 benthos and has impacts on trophic links that include higher order consumers in the pelagic zone
23 (Rabalais, Turner, and Wiseman Jr, 2002).

24
25 Until recently, pollution has been the major driver of decreases in the health of marine
26 ecosystems such as coral reefs, sea grasses, and kelp beds (Jackson *et al.*, 2001; Hughes *et al.*,
27 2003; Pandolfi *et al.*, 2003). Because pollution is usually more local in scope, it historically
28 could be managed within individual MPAs; however, the addition of climate change stressors
29 such as increased oceanic temperature, decreased pH, and greater fluctuations in salinity present
30 greater challenges (Coe and Rogers, 1997; Carpenter *et al.*, 1998; Khamer, Bouya, and Ronneau,
31 2000; Burton, Jr. and Pitt, 2001; Sobel and Dahlgren, 2004; Orr *et al.*, 2005; Breitburg and
32 Riedel, 2005; O'Connor *et al.*, 2007; IPCC, 2007b).

33
34 For example, coral bleaching from the combined stresses of climate change and local pollution
35 (*e.g.*, high temperature and sedimentation) have already been observed (Jackson *et al.*, 2001;
36 Hughes *et al.*, 2003; Pandolfi *et al.*, 2003). Identifying those stressors with the greatest effect is
37 not trivial. Research in coral genomics may provide diagnostic tools for identifying stressors in
38 coral reefs and other marine communities (*e.g.*, Edge *et al.*, 2005).

39
40 **Commercial Fishing and Aquaculture**

41 Commercial fishing has ecosystem effects on three fronts: through the physical impacts of
42 fishing gear on habitat, over-fishing of commercial stocks and incidental take of non-targeted
43 species. The use of trawls, seines, mollusk dredges, and other fishing gear can cause damage to
44 living seafloor structures and alterations to geologic structures, reducing habitat complexity
45 (Engel and Kvitek, 1998; Thrush and Dayton, 2002; Dayton, Thrush, and Coleman, 2002; Hixon
46 and Tissot, 2007). Over-fishing is also common in the United States, with a conservative

1 estimate of 26% of fisheries overexploited (Pauly *et al.*, 1998; National Research Council, 1999;
2 Jackson *et al.*, 2001; Pew Ocean Commission, 2003; National Marine Fisheries Service, 2005;
3 Lotze *et al.*, 2006). Meanwhile, non-specific fishing gear (*e.g.*, trawls, seines, dredges) causes
4 considerable mortality of by-catch that includes invertebrates, fishes, sea turtles, marine
5 mammals, birds, and other life stages of commercially targeted species (Condrey and Fuller,
6 1992; Norse, 1993; Sobel and Dahlgren, 2004; Hiddink, Jennings, and Kaiser, 2006).

7
8 Aquaculture has sometimes been introduced to augment fisheries production. Unfortunately
9 experience shows that aquaculture can have negative environmental impacts including extensive
10 mangrove and coastal wetland conversion to ponds, changes in hydrologic regimes, and
11 discharge of high levels of organic matter and pollutants into coastal waters (Eng, Paw, and
12 Guarin, 1989; Iwama, 1991; Naylor *et al.*, 2000). Furthermore, many aquacultural practices are
13 not sustainable because farmed species consume natural resources at high rates and the intense
14 culture environment (*e.g.*, overcrowding) creates conditions for disease outbreaks (Eng, Paw, and
15 Guarin, 1989; Iwama, 1991; Pauly *et al.*, 2002; 2003).

16
17 Fishery populations that are overstressed and overfished exhibit greater sensitivity to climate
18 change and other anthropogenically derived stressors than do healthy populations (Hughes *et al.*,
19 2005). Overfishing can reduce mean life span as well as lifetime reproductive success and larval
20 quality, making fished species more susceptible to both short- and long-term perturbations (such
21 as changes in prevailing current patterns) that affect recruitment success (Pauly *et al.*, 1998;
22 Jackson *et al.*, 2001; Dayton, Thrush, and Coleman, 2002; Pauly *et al.*, 2003; Sobel and
23 Dahlgren, 2004; Estes, 2005; Law and Stokes, 2005; Steneck and Sala, 2005; O'Connor *et al.*,
24 2007). Changing climatic regimes can also influence species' distributions, which are set by
25 physiological tolerances to temperature, precipitation, dissolved oxygen, pH, and salinity.
26 Because rates of climate change appear to exceed the capacity of many commercial species to
27 adapt, species will shift their ranges in accordance with their physiological thresholds and may
28 ultimately be forced to extend past the boundaries of their "known" native range, becoming
29 invasive elements (Murawski, 1993; Walther *et al.*, 2002; Roessig *et al.*, 2004; Perry *et al.*, 2005;
30 Harley *et al.*, 2006).

31
32 Commercial exploitation of even a single keystone species, such as a top consumer, can
33 destabilize ecosystems by decreasing redundancy and making them more susceptible to climate
34 change stressors (Hughes *et al.*, 2005). Examples of such ecosystem destabilization through
35 overfishing abound, including the formerly cod-dominated system of the western North Atlantic
36 (see Box 8.2), and the fish grazing community on Caribbean coral reefs (*e.g.*, Frank *et al.*, 2005;
37 Mumby *et al.*, 2006).

38 39 **Nonindigenous/Invasive Species**

40 Invasive species threaten all marine and estuarine communities. Currently, an estimated 2% of
41 extinctions in marine ecosystems are related to invasive species while 6% are the result of other
42 factors including climate change, pollution, and disease (Dulvy, Sadovy, and Reynolds, 2003).
43 Principal mechanisms of introduction vary and have occurred via both accidental and intentional
44 release (Ruiz *et al.*, 2000; Carlton, 2000; Hare and Whitfield, 2003). Invasive species are often
45 opportunistic and can force shifts in the relative abundance and distribution of native species,
46 and cause significant changes in species richness and community structure (Sousa, 1984; Moyle,

1 1986; Mills, Soulé, and Doak, 1993; Baltz and Moyle, 1993; Carlton, 1996; Carlton, 2000;
2 Marchetti, Moyle, and Levine, 2004).

3
4 Some native species, particularly rare and endangered ones with small population sizes and gene
5 pools, are unlikely to be able to adapt quickly enough or shift their ranges rapidly enough to
6 compensate for the changing climatic regimes proposed by current climate change models
7 (IPCC, 2007b). These species will likely have their competitive abilities compromised and be
8 more susceptible to displacement by invasive species. Increased seawater temperatures resulting
9 from climate change may also allow introduced species to spawn earlier and for longer periods
10 of the year, thus increasing their population growth rates relative to natives while simultaneously
11 expanding their range (Carlton, 2000; McCarty, 2001; Stachowicz *et al.*, 2002; Marchetti,
12 Moyle, and Levine, 2004). Furthermore, the same characteristics that make species successful
13 invaders may also make them pre-adapted to respond to, and capitalize on, climate change. As
14 one example, Indo-Pacific lionfish (*Pterois volitans* and *P. miles*) are now widely distributed off
15 the southeastern coast of the United States less than 10 years after being first observed off
16 Florida (Whitfield *et al.*, 2007). One of the few factors limiting their spread is intolerance to
17 minimum water temperatures during winter (Kimball *et al.*, 2004). Ocean warming could
18 facilitate depth and range expansion in these species.

19 20 **Diseases**

21 Disease outbreaks alter the structure and function of marine ecosystems by affecting the
22 abundance and diversity of vertebrates (*e.g.*, mammals, turtles, fish), invertebrates (*e.g.*, corals,
23 crustaceans, echinoderms, oysters) and plants (*e.g.*, seagrasses, kelp beds). Pathogen outbreaks or
24 epidemics spread rapidly due to the lack of dispersal barriers in some parts of the ocean and the
25 potential for long-term survival of pathogens outside the host (Harvell *et al.*, 1999; Harvell *et al.*,
26 2002). Many pathogens of marine taxa such as coral viruses, bacteria, and fungi are positively
27 responsive to temperature increases within their physiological thresholds (Porter *et al.*, 2001;
28 Kim and Harvell, 2004; Munn, 2006; Mydlarz, Jones, and Harvell, 2006; Boyett, Bourne, and
29 Willis, 2007).

30
31 Exposure to disease compromises the ability of species to resist other anthropogenic stressors
32 and vice versa (Harvell *et al.*, 1999; Harvell *et al.*, 2002). For example, in 1998, the most
33 geographically extensive and severe coral bleaching ever recorded was associated with the high
34 sea surface temperature anomalies facilitated by an ENSO event (Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999;
35 Wilkinson *et al.*, 1999; Mydlarz, Jones, and Harvell, 2006). In some species of reef-building
36 corals and gorgonians, this bleaching event was thought to be accelerated by opportunistic
37 infections (Harvell *et al.*, 1999; Harvell *et al.*, 2001). Several pathogens—such as bacteria,
38 viruses, and fungi that infect such diverse hosts as seals, abalone, and starfish—show possible
39 onset with warmer temperatures (reviewed in Harvell *et al.*, 2002). The mechanisms for
40 pathogenesis, however, are largely unknown. Given that exposure to multiple stressors may
41 compromise the ability of marine species to resist infection, the most effective means of reducing
42 disease incidence under climate change may be to minimize impacts of stressors such as
43 pollution and overfishing.

1 **8.2.3 Management Approaches and Sensitivity of Management Goals to Climate Change**

2 Marine protected area programs have been identified as a critical mechanism for protecting
3 marine biodiversity and associated ecosystem services (Ballantine, 1997; National Research
4 Council, 2001; Palumbi, 2002; Roberts *et al.*, 2003a; Sobel and Dahlgren, 2004; Palumbi, 2004;
5 Roberts, 2005; Salm, Done, and McLeod, 2006). MPA networks are being implemented globally
6 to address multiple threats to the marine environment, and are generally accepted as an
7 improvement over individual MPAs (Ballantine, 1997; Salm, Clark, and Siirila, 2000; Allison *et*
8 *al.*, 2003; Roberts *et al.*, 2003a; Mora *et al.*, 2006). Networks are more effective than single
9 MPAs at protecting the full range of habitat and community types because they spread the risk of
10 losing a habitat or community type following a disturbance such as a climate-change impact
11 across a larger area. Networks are better able to protect both short- and long-distance dispersers
12 than individual MPAs and thus have more potential to achieve conservation and fishery
13 objectives (Roberts, 1997a). Networks provide enhanced larval recruitment among adjacent
14 MPAs that are linked by local and regional dispersal patterns, enhanced protection of critical life
15 stages, and enhanced protection of critical processes and functions, *e.g.*, migration corridors
16 (Gerber and Heppell, 2004). Finally, networks allow for protection of marine ecosystems at an
17 appropriate scale. A network of MPAs could cover a large gradient of biogeographic and
18 oceanographic conditions without the need to establish one extremely large reserve and can
19 provide more inclusive representation of stakeholders (National Research Council, 2001;
20 Hansen, Biringer, and Hoffman, 2003).

21
22 While MPA networks are considered a critical management tool for conserving marine
23 biodiversity, they must be established together with other management strategies to be effective
24 (Hughes *et al.*, 2003). MPAs are vulnerable to activities beyond their boundaries. For example,
25 uncontrolled pollution and unsustainable fishing outside protected areas can adversely affect the
26 species and ecosystem function within the protected area (Kaiser, 2005). Therefore, MPA
27 networks should be established considering other forms of fisheries management (*e.g.*, catch
28 limits and gear restrictions) (Allison, Lubchenco, and Carr, 1998; Beger, Jones, and Munday,
29 2003; Kaiser, 2005) and coastal management to control land-based threats such as pollution and
30 sedimentation (Cho, 2005). In the long term, the most effective configuration would be a
31 network of highly protected areas nested within a broader management framework (Salm, Done,
32 and McLeod, 2006). Such a framework might include a vast multiple-use area managed for
33 sustainable fisheries as well as protection of biodiversity, integrated with coastal management
34 regimes where appropriate, to enable effective control of threats originating upstream and to
35 maintain high water quality (*e.g.*, Done and Reichelt, 1998).

36
37 The National Marine Sanctuary Program has developed a set of goals (Box 8.1) to help clarify
38 the relationship between operations at individual sanctuaries and the broad directives of the
39 National Marine Sanctuaries Act. A subset of these goals (Goals 1, 4, 5, and 6) are relevant to
40 resource protection and climate change. Box 8.3 expands upon Goals 1, 4, 5, and 6 to display
41 their attendant objectives, which provide guidance for management plans that are developed by
42 sanctuary sites (see Table 8.3). Sanctuary management plans are developed and subsequently
43 reviewed and revised on a five-year cycle as a collaboration between sanctuary staff and local
44 communities. After threats and stressors to resources are identified, action plans are prepared that
45 identify activities to address them. Threats and stressors may include such things as

1 overexploitation of natural resources, degraded water quality, and habitat damage and
2 destruction. Sanctuary management plans are designed to address additional issues raised by
3 local communities, such as user conflicts, needs for education and outreach, and interest in
4 volunteer programs.
5

6 Fully protected marine reserves within national marine sanctuaries have been implemented at
7 some sites (*e.g.*, Channel Islands and the Florida Keys; Keller and Causey, 2005) to reduce
8 fishing pressure; the entire area of the Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument will
9 become no-take within five years. These additional protective actions complement existing
10 fishery regulations. Some sites such as Monterey Bay and the Florida Keys have Water Quality
11 Protection Programs to address issues such as watershed pollution, vessel discharges, and, in the
12 case of the Florida Keys, wastewater and stormwater treatment systems. Habitat damage may be
13 addressed using waterway marking programs to reduce vessel groundings and mooring buoys to
14 minimize anchor damage. Many of these activities are supported through education and outreach
15 programs to inform the public, volunteer programs to help distribute information (*e.g.*, Team
16 OCEAN; Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary, 2003), and law enforcement.
17

18 Sanctuary management plans are intended to be comprehensive and may take years of
19 community involvement to develop. For example, it took over five years to develop the
20 management plan for the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary (Keller and Causey, 2005),
21 and an additional three years were required to prepare a supplemental plan for the Tortugas
22 Ecological Reserve (Cowie-Haskell and Delaney, 2003; Delaney, 2003).
23

24 Effective management and preservation of ecosystem characteristics in the face of climate
25 change projections is relevant to achieving NMSP Goals 1, 2, 4, and 5 (Box 8.1). The NMSP can
26 be a leader in employing new management approaches by including stakeholders in decision-
27 making (Sanctuary Advisory Councils and public scoping meetings at the site level). This model
28 of public involvement should serve well as management strategies adapt under the stresses of
29 climate change. Exporting lessons learned to the general public, managers of other MPAs, and
30 the international community will further address NMSP Goals 2, 3, and 6.
31

32 An additional approach of the NMSP that should further efforts toward adaptive management in
33 the context of climate change is the development of performance measures to help evaluate the
34 success of the program (Box 8.4). Although climate change stressors are not explicitly addressed
35 in these performance measures, attainment of a number of these measures clearly will be
36 increasingly affected by climate change. The performance-measure approach should encourage
37 sanctuary managers to address climate change impacts using the public processes of Sanctuary
38 Advisory Councils and public scoping meetings. In addition, national marine sanctuaries are
39 preparing Condition Reports (National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2007c), which provide
40 summaries of resources, pressures on resources, current condition and trends, and management
41 responses to pressures that threaten the integrity of the marine environment. These reports will
42 provide opportunities for sanctuaries to evaluate climate change as a pressure and identify
43 management responses on a site-by-site basis.

1 **8.3 Adapting to Climate Change**

2 MPA managers can respond to challenges of climate change at two scales: actions at individual
3 sites and implementing MPA networks. At particular MPAs, managers can increase efforts to
4 ameliorate existing anthropogenic stressors with a goal of reducing the overall load of multiple
5 stressors (Breitburg and Riedel, 2005). For example, the concept of protecting or enhancing coral
6 reef resilience has been proposed to help ameliorate negative consequences of coral bleaching
7 (Hughes *et al.*, 2003; Hughes *et al.*, 2005; Marshall and Schuttenberg, 2006a). Under this
8 approach, resilience is an ecosystem property that can be managed and is defined as the ability of
9 an ecosystem to resist or absorb disturbance without significantly degrading processes that
10 determine community structure, or if alterations occur, recovery is *not* to an alternate community
11 state (Gunderson, 2000; Nyström, Folke, and Moberg, 2000; Hughes *et al.*, 2003). In short,
12 managing for resilience includes dealing with causes of coral reef disturbance and decline that
13 managers can address at local and regional levels, such as overfishing and pollution. These are
14 the things that managers would want to do anyway, even if climate change were not a threat,
15 because these activities help to maintain the ecological and economic value of the ecosystem.
16

17 In addition to the approach of ameliorating existing stressors such as overfishing and pollution,
18 MPA managers can protect apparently resistant and potentially resilient areas, develop networks
19 of MPAs, and integrate climate change into planning efforts. Specific examples of adaptation
20 options from across these approaches are presented in Box 8.5 and elaborated upon further in the
21 sections that follow.

22 **8.3.1 Ameliorate Existing Stressors in Coastal Waters**

23 Managers can increase resilience to climate change in areas of interest by managing other
24 stressors, such as fishing, input of nutrients, sediment and pollutants, and water quality. Kelp
25 forest ecosystems in marine reserves, where no fishing is allowed, are more resilient to ocean
26 warming than those in areas where fishing occurs (Behrens and Lafferty, 2004). This ecological
27 response is a result of changes in trophic structure of communities in and around the reserves.
28 When top predators such as spiny lobster are fished, their prey, herbivorous sea urchins, increase
29 in abundance and consume giant kelp and other algae. When kelp forests are subjected to intense
30 grazing by these herbivores, the density of kelp is reduced, sometimes becoming an “urchin
31 barren,” particularly during ocean warming events such as ENSO cycles. In reserves, where
32 fishing is prohibited, lobster populations were larger, urchin populations were diminished, and
33 kelp forests persisted over a period of 20 years, including four ENSO cycles (Behrens and
34 Lafferty, 2004).
35

36 Managing water quality has been identified as a key strategy for maintaining ecological
37 resilience (Salm, Done, and McLeod, 2006; Marshall and Schuttenberg, 2006a). In the Florida
38 Keys National Marine Sanctuary and the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park, water quality
39 protection is recognized as an essential component of management (The State of Queensland and
40 Commonwealth of Australia, 2003; Grigg *et al.*, 2005; also see the Monterey Bay National
41 Marine Sanctuary's water quality agreements with land-based agencies: Monterey Bay National
42 Marine Sanctuary, 2007). Strong circumstantial evidence exists linking poor water quality to
43 increased macroalgal abundances, internal bioerosion, and susceptibility to some diseases in

1 corals and octocorals (Fabricius and De'ath, 2004). Addressing sources of pollution, especially
2 nutrient enrichment, which can lead to increased algal growth and reduced coral settlement, is
3 critical to maintaining ecosystem health. In addition to controlling point-source pollution within
4 an MPA, managers must also link their MPAs into the governance system of adjacent areas to
5 control sources of pollution beyond the MPA boundaries. Further actions necessary to improve
6 water quality include raising awareness of how land-based activities can adversely affect
7 adjacent marine environments, designing policies for integrated coastal and watershed
8 management, and developing options for advanced wastewater treatment (The Group of Experts
9 on Scientific Aspects of Marine Environmental Protection, 2001).

10
11 Managers can build resilience to climate change into MPA management strategies by protecting
12 marine habitats such as coral reefs and mangroves from direct threats such as pollution,
13 sedimentation, destructive fishing, and overfishing. The healthier the marine habitat, the greater
14 the potential will be for it to recover from a catastrophic event such as mass coral bleaching.
15 Therefore, managers should continue to develop and implement strategies to reduce land-based
16 pollution, decrease nutrient and sediment runoff, eliminate the use of persistent pesticides, and
17 increase filtration of effluent to improve water quality.

18
19 Another mechanism that has been identified to maintain resilience is the management of
20 functional groups, specifically herbivores (Hughes *et al.*, 2003; Bellwood *et al.*, 2004). Bellwood
21 *et al.* (2004) identified three functional groups of herbivores that assist in maintaining coral reef
22 resilience: bioeroders, grazers, and scrapers. These groups work together to break down dead
23 coral to allow substrate for recruitment, graze macroalgae, and reduce the development of algal
24 turfs to allow for a clean substrate for coral settlement. Algal biomass must be kept low to
25 maintain healthy coral reefs (Sammarco, 1980; Hatcher and Larkum, 1983; Steneck and Dethier,
26 1994). In a recent paper by Bellwood, Hughes, and Hoey (2006), the authors identify the need to
27 protect both the species that prevent phase shifts from coral-dominated to algal-dominated reefs
28 and the species that help reefs recover from algal dominance. They suggest that while
29 parrotfishes and surgeonfishes appear to play a critical role in preventing phase shifts to
30 macroalgae, their ability to remove algae may be limited if a phase shift to macroalgae has
31 already occurred (Bellwood, Hughes, and Hoey, 2006). In their study on the Great Barrier Reef,
32 the phase shift reversal from macroalgal-dominated to a coral- and epilithic algal-dominated state
33 was driven by a single batfish species (*Platax pinnatus*), not grazing by dominant parrotfishes or
34 surgeonfishes (Bellwood, Hughes, and Hoey, 2006). This finding highlights the need to protect
35 the full range of species to maintain resilience.

36
37 Although protecting functional groups is a critical component of resilience, understanding which
38 groups should be protected requires a detailed knowledge of species and interactions that is not
39 often available for all species. Therefore, managers should strive to maintain the maximum
40 number of species in the absence of detailed data on ecological and species interactions. For
41 example, for managing coral reefs, regional guidelines identifying key herbivores that reduce
42 macroalgae and encourage coral reef settlement should be developed. For kelp forests, managers
43 should identify key predators and limit fishing on those predators to reduce herbivory and
44 promote growth of healthy kelp forests. These guidelines should be field tested at different
45 locations to verify the recommendations.

1 **8.3.2 Protect Apparently Resistant and Potentially Resilient Areas**

2 Marine ecosystems that contain biologically generated habitats face potential loss of habitat
3 structure as climate change progresses (*e.g.*, coral reefs, seagrass beds, kelp forests, and deep
4 coral communities) (see Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Steneck *et al.*, 2002; Roberts, Wheeler, and
5 Freiwald, 2006; Orth *et al.*, 2006). It is likely that climate change contributes to mass coral
6 bleaching events (Reaser, Pomerance, and Thomas, 2000), which became recognized globally in
7 1997-1998 (Wilkinson, 1998; 2000) and have affected large regions in subsequent years
8 (Wilkinson, 2002; 2004; Whelan *et al.*, In Press). The amount of live coral has declined
9 dramatically in the Caribbean region over the past 30 years as a result of bleaching, diseases, and
10 hurricanes (Gardner *et al.*, 2003; 2005). In the Florida Keys, fore-reef environments that
11 formerly supported dense growths of coral are now nearly depauperate, and highest coral cover
12 is in patch reef environments (Porter *et al.*, 2002; Lirman and Fong, 2007). Irrespective of the
13 mechanism—resistance, resilience, or exposure to relatively low levels of past environmental
14 stress— these patch-reef environments might be good candidates for additional protective
15 measures due to their ability to survive climate stress.

16
17 Done (2001; see also Marshall and Schuttenberg, 2006b) presented a decision tree for identifying
18 areas that would be suitable for MPAs under a global warming scenario. Two types of favorable
19 outcomes included reefs that survived bleaching (*i.e.*, were resilient) and reefs that were not
20 exposed to elevated sea surface temperatures (*e.g.*, may be located within refugia). This type of
21 decision tree has already been adapted to aid resilient site selection for mangroves (McLeod and
22 Salm, 2006) as well, and it could be extended further for other habitat types such as seagrass
23 beds and kelp forests.

24
25 Because climate change impacts on marine systems are patchy (with reefs that avoid bleaching
26 one year potentially bleaching the following year), it is essential that areas that appear to be
27 resistant or resilient to climate change impacts be monitored and tested to ensure that they
28 continue to provide benefits (see section 8.3.4.1 for more on monitoring and research). This
29 allows managers to target potential refugia for MPA design now while also monitoring these
30 areas over time so that management can be adapted as circumstances and habitats change (*i.e.*, as
31 per an adaptive management approach).

32 **8.3.3 Develop Networks of MPAs**

33 The concept of systems or networks of MPAs has considerable appeal because of emergent
34 properties (*i.e.*, representation, replication, sustainability, connectivity) (Ballantine, 1997;
35 National Research Council, 2001; Roberts *et al.*, 2003a), spreading the risk of catastrophic
36 habitat loss (Palumbi, 2002; Allison *et al.*, 2003), and the provision of functional wilderness
37 areas sufficient to resist fundamental changes to entire ecosystems (Kaufman *et al.*, 2004). While
38 MPA networks have been recognized as a valuable tool to conserve marine resources in the face
39 of climate change, there have been a number of challenges to implementation (Pandolfi *et al.*,
40 2005; Mora *et al.*, 2006); nevertheless, a number of principles have been developed and are
41 gradually being applied to aid MPA network design and implementation. These principles are
42 described below.

1 **8.3.3.1 Protect Critical Areas**

2 Critical areas—areas that are biologically or ecologically significant—should be identified and
3 included in MPAs. These critical areas include nursery grounds, spawning grounds, areas of high
4 species diversity, areas that contain a variety of habitat types in close proximity to each other,
5 and climate refugia (Allison, Lubchenco, and Carr, 1998; Sale *et al.*, 2005; Sadovy, 2006). Coral
6 assemblages that demonstrate resilience to climate change may be identified and provided
7 additional protection to ensure a secure source of recruitment to support recovery in damaged
8 areas. Managers can analyze how assemblages have responded to past climate events to
9 determine likely resilience to climate change impacts. For example, some coral reefs resist
10 bleaching due to genetic characteristics or avoid bleaching due to environmental factors.
11 Managers can fully protect those that either resist or recover quickly from mass bleaching events,
12 as well as those that are located in areas where physical conditions (*e.g.*, currents, shading)
13 afford them some protection from temperature anomalies. Reefs that are resistant and reefs that
14 are located in climate refugia play a critical role in reef survival by providing a reliable source of
15 larvae for dispersal to and recovery of affected areas (Salm and Coles, 2001). For coral reefs,
16 indicators of potential refugia include a ratio of live to dead coral and a range of colony sizes and
17 ages suggesting persistence over time. Refugia must be large enough to support high species
18 richness to maximize their effectiveness as sources of recruits to replenish areas that have been
19 damaged (Palumbi *et al.*, 1997; Bellwood and Hughes, 2001; Salm, Done, and McLeod, 2006).

20 **8.3.3.2 Incorporate Connectivity in Planning MPA Networks**

21 Connectivity is the natural linkage between marine habitats (Crowder *et al.*, 2000; Stewart,
22 Noyce, and Possingham, 2003; Roberts *et al.*, 2003b), which occurs through advection by ocean
23 currents and includes larval dispersal and movements of adults and juveniles. Connectivity is an
24 important part of ensuring larval exchange and the replenishment of populations in areas
25 damaged by natural or human-related agents. Salm *et al.* (2006) recommend that patterns of
26 connectivity be identified among source and sink reefs to inform reef selection in the design of
27 MPA networks, providing “stepping-stones” for reefs to enhance recovery following disturbance
28 events. This principle applies to other marine systems, such as mangroves, as well. For example,
29 healthy mangroves could be selected up-current from areas that may succumb to sea level rise,
30 and areas could be selected that would be suitable habitat for mangroves in the future following
31 sea level rise. These areas of healthy mangroves could provide secure sources of propagules to
32 replenish down-current mangroves following a disturbance event.

33
34 A suspected benefit of MPAs is the dispersal of larvae to areas surrounding MPAs, but there are
35 few data that can be used to estimate the exchange of larvae among local populations (Palumbi,
36 2004). Understanding larval dispersal and transport are critical to determining connectivity, and
37 thus the design of MPAs. The size of an individual MPA should be based on the movement of
38 adults of species of interest (Hastings and Botsford, 2003; Botsford, Micheli, and Hastings,
39 2003; California Department of Fish and Game, 2007a). An individual MPA should be large
40 enough to contain the different habitats used and the daily movements of species of interest. The
41 distance between adjacent MPAs should take into account the potential dispersal distances of
42 larvae of fish, invertebrates, and other species of interest (California Department of Fish and
43 Game, 2007a).

44

1 One approach in MPA design has been to establish the size of MPAs based on the spatial scale of
2 movements of adults of heavily fished species and to space MPAs based on scales of larval
3 dispersal (Palumbi, 2004). However, guidelines for the minimum size of MPAs and no-take
4 reserves, and spacing between adjacent MPAs, vary dramatically depending on the goals for the
5 MPAs (Hastings and Botsford, 2003). Friedlander *et al.* (2003) suggested that no-take zones
6 should measure ca. 10 km² to ensure viable populations of a range of species in the Seaflower
7 Biosphere Reserve, Colombia. Airamé *et al.* (2003) recommended a network of three to five no-
8 take zones in each biogeographic region of the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary,
9 comprising approximately 30–50% of the area, in order to conserve biodiversity and contribute
10 to sustainable fisheries in the region.

11
12 Recent studies confirm that larval dispersal is more localized than previously thought, and short-
13 lived species may require regular recruitment from oceanographically connected sites (Cowen,
14 Paris, and Srinivasan, 2006; Steneck, 2006). Palumbi (2003) concluded that marine reserves tens
15 of km apart may exchange larvae in a single generation. Shanks, Grantham, and Carr (2003)
16 similarly concluded that marine reserves spaced 20 km apart would allow larvae to be carried to
17 adjacent reserves. The Science Advisory Team to California’s Marine Life Protection Act
18 Initiative recommended spacing high protection MPAs, such as marine reserves, within 50–100
19 km in order to accommodate larval dispersal distances of a wide range of species of interest.
20 Halpern *et al.* (2006) corroborated these findings using an uncertainty-modeling approach.

21
22 No-take zones measuring a minimum of 20 km in diameter will accommodate short-distance
23 dispersers in addition to including a significant part of the local benthic fishes, thus generating
24 fisheries benefits (Shanks, Grantham, and Carr, 2003; Fernandes *et al.*, 2005; Mora *et al.*, 2006).
25 While this recommendation is likely to protect the majority of small benthic fish and benthic
26 invertebrates, it is unlikely to protect large pelagic fish and large migratory species (Roberts *et*
27 *al.*, 2003b; Palumbi, 2004). Recommendations to protect highly migratory and pelagic species
28 include designing MPAs to protect predictable breeding and foraging habits, ensuring these have
29 dynamic boundaries and extensive buffers, and establishing dynamic MPAs that are defined by
30 the extent and location of large-scale oceanographic features such as oceanic fronts where
31 changes in types and abundances of marine organisms often occur (Hyrenbach, Forney, and
32 Dayton, 2000).

33
34 A system-wide approach should be taken that addresses patterns of connectivity between
35 ecosystems like mangroves, coral reefs, and seagrass beds (Mumby *et al.*, 2004). For example,
36 mangroves in the Caribbean enhance the biomass of coral reef fish communities because they
37 provide essential nursery habitat. Coral reefs can protect mangroves by buffering the impacts of
38 wave erosion, while mangroves can protect reefs and seagrass beds from siltation. Thus,
39 connectivity between functionally linked habitats is essential for maintaining ecosystem function
40 and resilience (Ogden and Gladfelter, 1983; Roberts, 1996; Nagelkerken *et al.*, 2000). Entire
41 ecological units (*e.g.*, coral reefs with their associated mangroves and seagrasses) should be
42 included in MPA design where possible. If entire biological units cannot be included, then larger
43 areas should be chosen over smaller areas to accommodate local-scale recruitment.

44
45 Although maintaining connectivity within and between MPAs is critical for maintaining marine
46 biodiversity, ecosystem function, and resilience, many challenges exist. For example, the same

1 currents and pathways that allow for larval recruitment following a disturbance event can expose
2 an ecosystem to invasive species or pollutants, which can undermine the resilience of a system
3 (McClanahan, Polunin, and Done, 2002). Numerous challenges also exist in estimating larval
4 dispersal patterns. Although there have been detailed studies addressing dispersal *potential* of
5 marine species based on their larval biology (*e.g.*, Shanks, Grantham, and Carr, 2003; Kinlan and
6 Gaines, 2003), little is known about where in the oceans larvae go and how far they travel. A
7 single network design is unlikely to satisfy the potential dispersal ranges for all species; Roberts
8 *et al.* (2003b) recommended an approach using various sizes and spacing of MPAs in a network
9 to accommodate the diversity of dispersal ranges. Larval duration in the plankton also varies
10 from minutes to years, and the more time propagules spend in the water column, the farther they
11 tend to be dispersed (Shanks, Grantham, and Carr, 2003; Steneck, 2006). Evidence from
12 hydrodynamic models and genetic structure data indicates that in addition to large variation of
13 larval dispersal distances among species, the average scale of dispersal can vary widely—even
14 within a given species—at different locations in space and time (*e.g.*, Cowen *et al.*, 2003; Sotka
15 *et al.*, 2004; Engie and Klinger, 2007). Some information suggests long-distance dispersal is
16 common, but other emerging information suggests that larval dispersal may be limited (Jones *et al.*,
17 1999; Swearer *et al.*, 1999; Warner, Swearer, and Caselle, 2000; Thorrold *et al.*, 2001;
18 Palumbi, 2003; Paris and Cowen, 2004; Jones, Planes, and Thorrold, 2005). Additional research
19 will be required to better understand where and how far larvae travel in various marine
20 ecosystems.

21 **8.3.3.3 Replicate Multiple Habitat Types in MPA Networks**

22 Recognizing that the science underlying resilience is developing and that climate change will not
23 affect marine species equally everywhere, an element of spreading the risk must be built into
24 MPA design. To avoid the loss of a single habitat type, managers can protect multiple samples of
25 the full range of marine habitat types (Hockey and Branch, 1994; Ballantine, 1997; Roberts *et al.*,
26 2001; Friedlander *et al.*, 2003; Roberts *et al.*, 2003b; Salm, Done, and McLeod, 2006; Wells,
27 2006). For example, these marine habitat types include coral reefs with varying degrees of
28 exposure to wave energy (*e.g.*, offshore, mid-shelf, and inshore reefs), seagrass beds, and a range
29 of mangrove communities (riverine, basin, and fringe forests in areas of varying salinity, tidal
30 fluctuation, and sea level) (Salm, Done, and McLeod, 2006). Reflecting the current federal goal
31 of protecting at least 30% of lifetime stock spawning potential (Ault, Bohnsack, and Meester,
32 1998; National Marine Fisheries Service, 2003), it has been recommended that more than 30% of
33 appropriate habitats should be included in no-take zones (Bohnsack *et al.*, 2002). In 2004, the
34 Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority increased the area of no-take zones from less than 5%
35 to approximately 33% of the area of the Marine Park, ensuring that at least 20% of each
36 bioregion (area of every region of biodiversity) was zoned as no-take (Day *et al.*, 2002;
37 Fernandes *et al.*, 2005).

38
39 For both terrestrial and marine systems, species diversity often increases with habitat diversity,
40 and species richness increases with habitat complexity; the greater the variety of habitats
41 protected, the greater the biodiversity conserved (Friedlander *et al.*, 2003; Carr *et al.*, 2003).
42 High species diversity may increase ecosystem resilience by ensuring sufficient redundancy to
43 maintain ecological processes and protect against environmental disturbance (McNaughton,
44 1977; McClanahan, Polunin, and Done, 2002). This is particularly true in the context of additive
45 or synergistic stressors. Maximizing habitat heterogeneity is critical for maintaining ecological

1 health, thus MPAs should include large areas and depth gradients (Done, 2001; Hansen,
2 Biringer, and Hoffman, 2003; Roberts *et al.*, 2003a). By protecting a representative range of
3 habitat types and communities, MPAs have a higher potential to protect a region's biodiversity,
4 biological connections between habitats, and ecological functions (Day *et al.*, 2002).

5
6 Replication of habitat types in multiple areas provides a further way to spread risks associated
7 with climate change. If a habitat type is destroyed in one area, a replicate of that habitat may
8 survive in another area to provide larvae for recovery. While the number of replicates will be
9 determined by a balance of desired representation and practical concerns such as funding and
10 enforcement capacity (Airamé *et al.*, 2003), generally at least three to five replicates are
11 recommended to effectively protect a particular habitat or community type (Airamé *et al.*, 2003;
12 Roberts *et al.*, 2003b; Fernandes *et al.*, 2005). Wherever possible, multiple samples of each
13 habitat type should be included in MPA networks or larger management frameworks such as
14 multiple-use MPAs or areas under rigorous integrated management regimes (Salm, Done, and
15 McLeod, 2006). This approach has the advantage of protecting essential habitat for a wide
16 variety of commercially valuable fish and macroinvertebrates.

17
18 While a risk-spreading approach to address the uncertainty of the impacts of climate change
19 makes practical sense, there are challenges to adequate representation. Managers must have
20 access to classification maps of marine habitat types/communities or local knowledge of habitat
21 types/communities for their area to determine which representative examples should be included
22 in MPA design. Replication of habitat types may not always be feasible due to limited
23 monitoring and enforcement resources, conflicting needs of resource users, and existence of
24 certain habitat types within an MPA.

25 **8.3.4 Integrate Climate Change Into MPA Planning, Management, and Evaluation**

26 A number of tools exist to help managers address climate impacts and build resilience into MPA
27 design and management. Ecological changes that are common in marine reserves worldwide and
28 guidelines for marine reserve design are summarized in an educational booklet for policymakers,
29 managers, and educators, entitled "The Science of Marine Reserves" (Partnership for
30 Interdisciplinary Studies of Coastal Oceans, 2005). The Reef Resilience toolkit (The Nature
31 Conservancy and Partners, 2004) provides marine resource managers with strategies to address
32 coral bleaching and conserve reef fish spawning aggregations, helping to build resilience into
33 coral reef conservation programs. "A Reef Manager's Guide to Coral Bleaching" (Marshall and
34 Schuttenberg, 2006a) provides information on the causes and consequences of coral bleaching
35 and management strategies to help local and regional reef managers reduce this threat to coral
36 reef ecosystems. The application of some of these strategies is discussed in a recent report by the
37 U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, which applies resilience theory in a case study for the
38 reefs of American Samoa and proposes climate adaptation strategies that can be leveraged with
39 existing local management plans, processes, and mandates (U.S. Environmental Protection
40 Agency, 2007).

41
42 In contrast, with regard to the impacts on marine organisms of reductions in ocean pH because of
43 CO₂ emissions (Caldeira and Wickett, 2003), management strategies have not yet been
44 developed. Adding chemicals to counter acidification is not a viable option, as it would likely be

1 only partly effective and, if so, only at a very local scale (The Royal Society, 2005). Therefore,
2 further research is needed on impacts of high concentrations of CO₂ in the oceans, possible
3 acclimation or evolution of organisms in response to changes in ocean chemistry, and how
4 management might respond (The Royal Society, 2005).

5
6 Determining management effectiveness is important for gauging the success of an MPA or
7 network, and also can inform adaptive management strategies to address shortcomings in a
8 particular MPA or network. To help managers improve the management of MPAs, the IUCN
9 World Commission on Protected Areas and the World Wide Fund for Nature developed an MPA
10 management effectiveness guidebook. This guidebook, “How is Your MPA Doing? A
11 Guidebook of Natural and Social Indicators for Evaluating Marine Protected Area Management
12 Effectiveness,” (Pomeroy, Parks, and Watson, 2004) helps managers and other decision-makers
13 assess management effectiveness through the selection and use of biophysical, socioeconomic,
14 and governance indicators. The goal of the guidebook is to enhance the capability for adaptive
15 management in MPAs. The “Framework for Measuring Success” (Parks and Salafsky, 2001) also
16 provides a suite of tools to analyze community response to an MPA, and replicable
17 methodologies to assess both social and ecological criteria.

18
19 National marine sanctuaries are preparing a series of Condition Reports for each site, which
20 provide a summary of resources, pressures on those resources, current condition and trends, and
21 management responses to the pressures (National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2007c). This
22 information is intended to be used in reviews of management plans and to help sanctuary staff
23 identify monitoring, characterization, and research priorities to address gaps, day-to-day
24 information needs, and new threats.

25 **8.3.4.1 MPA Monitoring and Research**

26 Marine protected areas must be effectively monitored to ensure the success of marine protected
27 area design and management. If MPA design and management are not successful, then
28 adaptations need to be made to meet the challenges posed by anthropogenic and natural stresses.
29 As the number of pristine areas is decreasing rapidly, establishing baseline data for marine
30 habitats is urgent and essential. Once baseline data are established, managers should monitor to
31 determine the effects of climate change on local resources and populations. Retrospective testing
32 of resistance to climate change impacts is difficult, so rapid response strategies should be in
33 place to assess ecological effects of extreme events as they occur. For coral reefs, coral bleaching
34 patterns either disappear with time or become confounded with other causes of mortality such as
35 predation by the crown-of-thorns starfish, disease, or multiple other stressors (Salm, Done, and
36 McLeod, 2006). Therefore, response strategies must be implemented immediately following a
37 mass bleaching event or other climate-related event to determine bleaching impacts. For coral
38 reefs, bleaching and mortality responses of corals to heat stress, the recovery rates of coral
39 communities, and the resilience/resistance of certain corals to bleaching should be monitored.

40
41 Monitoring also can be an effective way to engage community members and raise awareness of
42 the impacts of climate change on marine systems. For example, the Reef Check program enables
43 community volunteers to collect coral reef monitoring data to supplement other monitoring data
44 from researchers and government agencies. Programs that engage coral reef users (such as local
45 fishermen and tourism operators) in monitoring can help raise awareness of impacts on marine

1 systems and can help support the need to manage for local threats. The Nature Conservancy is
2 managing the Florida Reef Resilience Program to develop strategies to improve the condition of
3 Florida’s coral reefs and support human dimensions investigations (The Nature Conservancy,
4 2007). The program includes annual surveys of coral bleaching effects at reefs along the Florida
5 Keys and the southeast Florida coast using trained divers from agencies, universities, and non-
6 governmental organizations.

7
8 Changes in ocean chemistry (CO₂ and O₂ levels and salinity), hydrography (sea level, currents,
9 vertical mixing, storms, and waves), and temperature should be monitored over long time scales
10 to determine climate changes and possible climate trends. This information could then be
11 analyzed to determine the efficacy of MPAs now and in the future. Changes in sea temperature,
12 sea level, and ocean chemistry will change species distributions.

13
14 NOAA’s Coral Reef Watch program (National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, 2007a)
15 provides products that can warn managers of potential impending bleaching events. In addition,
16 Coral Reef Watch is developing bleaching forecasts that will provide outlooks of bleaching
17 potential months in advance. These tools can help managers prepare for bleaching events so that
18 when the event occurs, managers can have the necessary capacity in place to respond. In addition
19 to a number of guides to help managers address resilience, global information databases exist
20 that consolidate climate change impacts on marine systems such as coral reefs. Reefbase (The
21 World Fish Center, 2007) is a global information system and is the database of the Global Coral
22 Reef Monitoring Network and the International Coral Reef Action Network (ICRAN). Coral
23 bleaching reports, maps, photographs, and publications are freely available on the website, and
24 bleaching reports can be submitted for inclusion in the database. Reefbase provides an essential
25 mechanism for collecting bleaching data from around the world, thus helping researchers and
26 managers to identify potential patterns in reef vulnerability.

27 **8.3.4.2 Social Resilience, Stakeholder Participation, and Education and Outreach**

28 In addition to identifying and building ecological resilience into MPA design and management, it
29 is equally important for managers to address social resilience (*i.e.*, social, economic, and political
30 factors that influence MPAs and networks). Social resilience is the “ability of groups or
31 communities to cope with external stresses and disturbances as a result of social, political and
32 environmental change” (Adger, 2000). MPAs that reinforce social resilience can provide
33 communities with the opportunity to strengthen social relations and political stability and
34 diversify economic options (Corrigan, 2006). A variety of management actions have been
35 identified to reinforce social resilience (Corrigan, 2006) including: 1) provide opportunities for
36 shared leadership roles within government and management systems (Adger *et al.*, 2005; Cinner
37 *et al.*, 2005; McClanahan *et al.*, 2006); 2) integrate MPAs and networks into broader coastal
38 management initiatives to increase public awareness and support of management goals (Marshall
39 and Schuttenberg, 2006a; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2007); 3) encourage local
40 economic diversification so that communities are able to deal with environmental, economic, and
41 social changes (Adger *et al.*, 2005; Marschke and Berkes, 2006); 4) encourage stakeholder
42 participation and incorporate their ecological knowledge in a multi-governance system
43 (Tompkins and Adger, 2004; Granek and Brown, 2005; Lebel *et al.*, 2006); and 5) make
44 culturally appropriate conflict resolution mechanisms accessible to local communities (Christie,
45 2004; Marschke and Berkes, 2006).

1
2 Some MPA managers may feel that engaging in supporting human adaptive capacity to climate
3 change impacts is beyond the scope of their work. However, it is important to recognize that
4 resource use patterns will change in response to changing environmental conditions. For
5 example, recent studies suggest that when fishers are meaningfully engaged in natural resource
6 management decision-making processes, their confidence and social resilience to changes in
7 resource access can be increased (Marshall, In Press). Furthermore, as management is adapted to
8 address changing conditions, engagement with stakeholders during this process will help MPA
9 managers build the alliances, knowledge, and influence needed to implement adaptive
10 approaches (Schuttenberg and Marshall, 2007). For example, national marine sanctuaries have
11 Sanctuary Advisory Councils comprised of a wide range of stakeholder representatives, which
12 provide advice to sanctuary managers and help develop sanctuary management plans (National
13 Marine Sanctuary Program, 2007b). Education and outreach programs can help inform the public
14 about effects of climate change on marine ecosystems and the pressing need to ameliorate
15 existing stressors in coastal waters.

16 **8.4 Case Studies**

17 This section includes three U.S. case studies along with an Australian case study for comparison.
18 Each case study discusses existing management approaches, threats of climate change, and
19 adaptation options. The case studies are located in Florida (Florida Keys National Marine
20 Sanctuary), Australia (Great Barrier Reef Marine Park), Hawaii (Papahānaumokuākea Marine
21 National Monument), and California (Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary). These MPAs
22 range in size, species composition, and levels of protection; no-take designations, for example,
23 are 6% (FKNMS), 10% (CINMS), 33% (GBRMP), and 100% (PMNM).
24

25 **8.4.1 Case Study: the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary**

26 **8.4.1.1 Introduction**

27 The Florida Keys are a limestone island archipelago extending southwest over 320 km from the
28 southern tip of the Florida mainland (Fig. 8.3). The Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary
29 (FKNMS) surrounds the Florida Reef Tract, one of the world’s largest systems of coral reefs and
30 the only bank-barrier reef in the coterminous United States. The FKNMS is bounded by and
31 connected to Florida Bay, the Southwest Florida Continental Shelf, and the Straits of Florida and
32 Atlantic Ocean. It is influenced by the powerful Loop Current/Florida Current/Gulf Stream
33 system to the west and south, as well as a weaker southerly flow along the West Florida Shelf
34 (Lee *et al.*, 2002). The combined Gulf of Mexico and tropical Atlantic biotic influences make the
35 area one of the most diverse in North America.
36

37 The uniqueness of the marine environment and ready access from the mainland by a series of
38 bridges and causeways draws millions of visitors to the Keys, including many from the heavily
39 populated city of Miami and other metropolitan areas of South Florida. Also, in recent years Key
40 West has become a major destination for cruise liners, attracting more than 500 stop-overs
41 annually. The major industry in the Florida Keys has become tourism, including dive shops,

1 charter fishing, and dive boats and marinas as well as hotels and restaurants. There also is an
2 important commercial fishing industry.

3
4 National Marine Sanctuaries established at Key Largo in 1975 and Looe Key in 1981
5 demonstrated that measures to protect coral reefs from direct impacts could be successful using
6 management actions such as mooring buoys, education programs, research and monitoring,
7 restoration efforts, and proactive, interpretive law enforcement. In 1989, mounting threats to the
8 health and ecological future of the coral reef ecosystem in the Florida Keys prompted Congress
9 to take further protective steps. The threat of oil drilling in the mid- to late-1980s off the Florida
10 Keys, combined with reports of deteriorating water quality throughout the region, occurred at the
11 same time as adverse effects of coral bleaching (Causey, 2001), the Caribbean-wide die-off of
12 the long-spined urchin (Lessios, Robertson, and Cubit, 1984), loss of living coral cover on reefs
13 (Porter and Meier, 1992), a major seagrass die-off (Robblee *et al.*, 1991), declines in reef fish
14 populations (Bohnsack, Harper, and McClellan, 1994; Ault, Bohnsack, and Meester, 1998), and
15 the spread of coral diseases (Kuta and Richardson, 1996). These were already topics of major
16 scientific concern and the focus of several scientific workshops when, in the fall of 1989, three
17 large ships ran aground on the Florida Reef Tract within a brief 18-day period. On November 16,
18 1990, President Bush signed into law the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary and Protection
19 Act. Specific regulations to manage the sanctuary did not go into effect until July 1997, after the
20 final management plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 1996) had been approved by the
21 Secretary of Commerce and the Governor and Cabinet of the State of Florida. The FKNMS
22 encompasses approximately 9,800 km² of coastal and oceanic waters surrounding the Florida
23 Keys (Keller and Causey, 2005) (Fig. 8.3), including the Florida Reef Tract, all of the mangrove
24 islands of the Florida Keys, extensive seagrass beds and hard-bottom areas, and hundreds of
25 shipwrecks.

26
27 Millions of visitors come to the Keys each year. Visitors spent \$1.2 billion (Leeworthy and
28 Wiley, 2003) over 12.1 million person-days (Johns *et al.*, 2003) in the Florida Keys between
29 June 2000 and May 2001. Over that period, visitors and residents spent 5.5 million of the person-
30 days on natural and artificial reefs. Significantly, visitors (and residents) perceive significant
31 declines in the quality of the marine environment of the Keys (Leeworthy, Wiley, and Hospital,
32 2004).

33 **8.4.1.2 Specific Management Goals and Current Ecosystem Stressors Being Addressed**

34 **Goal and Objectives of the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary**

35 The goal of the FKNMS is “To preserve and protect the physical and biological components of
36 the South Florida estuarine and marine ecosystem to ensure its viability for the use and
37 enjoyment of present and future generations” (U.S. Department of Commerce, 1996). The
38 Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary and Protection Act as well as the Sanctuary Advisory
39 Council identified a number of objectives to achieve this goal (Box 8.6).

40 41 **Coral Reef and Seagrass Protection**

42 The management plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 1996) established a channel and reef
43 marking program that coordinated federal, state, and local efforts to mark channels and shallow
44 reef areas. These markers help prevent damage from boat groundings and propeller-scarring.
45

1 A mooring buoy program is one of the most simple and effective management actions to protect
2 sanctuary resources from direct impact by boat anchors. By installing mooring buoys in high-use
3 areas, the sanctuary has prevented damage to coral from the thousands of anchors dropped every
4 week in the Keys.

6 **Marine Zoning**

7 The management plan implemented marine zoning with five categories of zones. The relatively
8 large “no-take” Ecological Reserve at Western Sambo (Fig. 8.3) was designed to help restore
9 ecosystem structure and function. A second Ecological Reserve was implemented in the
10 Tortugas region in 2001 as one of the largest no-take areas in U.S. waters (U.S. Department of
11 Commerce, 2000; Cowie-Haskell and Delaney, 2003; Delaney, 2003). In addition to the larger
12 Ecological Reserves, there are 18 small, no-take Sanctuary Preservation Areas (SPAs) that
13 protect over 65% of shallow, spur and groove reef habitat. These areas displaced few commercial
14 and recreational fishermen and resolved a user conflict with snorkeling and diving activities in
15 the same shallow reef areas. Four small Research-Only Areas are also no-take; only scientists
16 with permits are allowed access.

17
18 In addition, 27 Wildlife Management Areas (WMAs) were established to address human impacts
19 to nearshore habitats such as seagrass flats and mangrove-fringed shorelines. Most of these
20 WMAs only allow no-motorized access. Finally, because the FKNMS Act called for the two
21 existing sanctuaries to be subsumed by the FKNMS, a final type of marine zone, called Existing
22 Management Areas, was used to codify both Key Largo and Looe Key NMS regulations into
23 FKNMS regulations. This was a way to maintain the additional protective resource measures that
24 had been in effect for the Key Largo and Looe Key NMSs since 1975 and 1981, respectively.
25 Those areas prohibited spearfishing, marine life collecting, fish trapping, trawling, and a number
26 of other specific activities that posed threats to coral reef resources.

28 **Improvement of Water Quality**

29 The FKNMS Act directed the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency to work with the State of
30 Florida and NOAA to develop a Water Quality Protection Program (WQPP) to address water
31 quality problems and establish corrective actions. The WQPP consists of four interrelated
32 components: 1) corrective actions that reduce water pollution directly by using engineering
33 methods, prohibiting or restricting certain activities, tightening existing regulations, and
34 increasing enforcement; 2) monitoring of water quality, seagrasses, and coral reefs to provide
35 information about status and trends in the sanctuary; 3) research to identify and understand
36 cause-and-effect relationships involving pollutants, transport pathways, and biological
37 communities; and 4) public education and outreach programs to increase public awareness of the
38 sanctuary, the WQPP, and pollution sources and impacts on sanctuary resources.

40 **Research and Monitoring**

41 The FKNMS management plan established a research and monitoring program that focused
42 research on specific management needs. In 2000, staff convened a panel of external peers to
43 review the sanctuary’s science program and provide recommendations for improvements
44 (Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary, 2007). Based on the panel’s recommendation that
45 sanctuary managers identify priority research needs, staff prepared a Comprehensive Science
46 Plan to identify priority areas (Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary, 2002). A second review
47 of the science program is being conducted during 2007.

1
2 The three monitoring projects of the WQPP (Fish and Wildlife Research Institute, 2007) are
3 developing baselines for water quality, seagrass distribution and abundance, and coral cover,
4 diversity, and condition. Such a baseline of information is particularly important to have as the
5 Comprehensive Everglades Restoration Plan (CERP) is implemented (U.S. Army Corps of
6 Engineers, 2007) just north of the FKNMS. The CERP is designed so that managers can be
7 adaptive to ecological or hydrological changes that are taking place within or emanating from the
8 Everglades, with possible positive or negative influences on communities in the FKNMS (Keller
9 and Causey, 2005).

10
11 Additional monitoring is done for the Marine Zone Monitoring Program, which is designed to
12 detect changes in populations, communities, and human dimensions resulting from no-take
13 zoning (Keller and Donahue, 2006). Coupled with environmental monitoring using data buoys
14 (National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, 2006b), routine cruises (National Oceanic
15 and Atmospheric Administration, 2007c), and remote sensing (NOAA Coast Watch Program,
16 2007), the FKNMS is a relatively data-rich environment for detecting presumptive climate
17 change effects.

18 **Education and Outreach**

19
20 The management plan for the FKNMS includes an education and outreach program that lays out
21 ways that education efforts can directly enhance the various programs to protect sanctuary
22 resources. Public awareness and understanding are essential to achieve resource protection
23 through cooperation and compliance with regulations.

24 **Regulations and Enforcement**

25
26 The FKNMS management plan includes regulations that have helped managers protect resources
27 of the sanctuary while having the least amount of impact on those who enjoy and utilize
28 sanctuary resources in a conscientious way. In order to maximize existing enforcement
29 programs, the management plan contains an enforcement plan that has served to help focus
30 enforcement on priority problems within the sanctuary. The program also coordinates all the
31 enforcement agencies in the Keys. Enforcement complements education and outreach in efforts
32 to achieve compliance with regulations.

33 **8.4.1.3 Potential Effects of Climate Change on Management**

34 **Coral Bleaching**

35 The potential effects of climate change on coral reefs are generally well known (*e.g.*, Smith and
36 Buddemeier, 1992; Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Buddemeier, Kleypas, and Aronson, 2004; Hoegh-
37 Guldberg, 2004; Sheppard, 2006), but the fate of individual reef systems such as the Florida Reef
38 Tract will vary based on a combination of factors related to history, geography, and an
39 understanding of processes that explain the patchiness of coral bleaching and subsequent
40 mortality that occurs on reefs. Coral bleaching was first reported in the Florida Keys in 1973
41 (Jaap, 1979), with at least seven other episodes documented prior to 2000 (Causey, 2001) and a
42 major bleaching event in 2005 that also affected the Caribbean (Miller *et al.*, 2006; Donner,
43 Knutson, and Oppenheimer, 2007). Unfortunately, before-during-and-after sampling has not
44 been conducted during major bleaching events in the Florida Keys, which makes assumptions
45 about coral mortality caused by bleaching at best correlative. Hurricanes are an especially

1 confounding factor when they occur during bleaching years, as they did in 1997–98 and 2005.
2 Still, anecdotal evidence suggests that large numbers of corals were killed in 1997–98 when
3 corals remained bleached for two consecutive years (Causey, 2001). Long-term temperature
4 records do not exist that reveal trends of increasing surface seawater temperature for the Florida
5 Keys, but Williams, Jackson, and Kutzbach (2007), using climate models and IPCC greenhouse
6 gas estimates to forecast how climate zones may change in the next 100 years, identified the
7 southeastern United States as a region with the greatest likelihood of developing novel regional
8 climate conditions that would be associated with temperature increases of several degrees. The
9 consequences of such changes on coral reefs in Florida will be dramatic unless significant
10 adaptation or acclimatization occurs.

11
12 Governments and agencies have responded to the crisis of coral bleaching with detailed
13 management plans (Westmacott *et al.*, 2000; Marshall and Schuttenberg, 2006b), workshops to
14 develop strategies that support response efforts (Salm and Coles, 2001), and research plans
15 (Marshall and Schuttenberg, 2006b; Puglise and Kelty, 2007). Two themes have emerged from
16 these efforts. First, effort is needed at local and regional levels to identify and protect bleaching-
17 resistant sites—if they exist. Second, management plans should be developed or modified in the
18 case of the FKNMS to restore or enhance the natural resilience (Hughes *et al.*, 2003; West and
19 Salm, 2003) of coral reefs.

20
21 Response plans to coral bleaching events depend upon increasingly accurate predictions to help
22 guide resource assessment and monitoring programs, and the NOAA Coral Reef Watch program
23 has increasingly accurate capability to predict the severity, timing, and geographic variability of
24 mass bleaching events, largely using remote sensing technologies (NOAA Satellite and
25 Information Service, 2007). Scientists and managers in Florida have not fully implemented an
26 assessment and monitoring program that specifically addresses bleaching events, including the
27 critical before-during-after sampling that is necessary to quantify the distribution, severity, and
28 consequences of mass bleaching. While such monitoring programs do nothing to prevent coral
29 bleaching, they do provide data that may identify bleaching-resistant sites that, if not already
30 protected, can be considered high priority for management action and protection against local
31 stressors.

32
33 Currently in Florida, status and trends monitoring has identified habitat types with higher than
34 average coral cover and abundance, but it is unknown whether these areas are more or less prone
35 to bleaching because only baseline assessments have been conducted (Miller *et al.*, 2005).
36 Deeper reefs (to 35 meters) may also exhibit less evidence of mortality caused by coral bleaching
37 (Miller *et al.*, 2001), but even less is known about these habitats—especially related to the
38 distribution and abundance of coral diseases, which can confound assessments of factors causing
39 mortality because the temporal scale of monitoring is sufficient to only assess disease prevalence
40 and not incidence or mortality rates.

41 **No-Take Protection and Zoning for Resistance or Resilience**

42 The use of marine reserves (Sanctuary Preservation Areas, Research-Only Areas, and Ecological
43 Reserves) in the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary has already been adopted as a tool to
44 manage multiple user groups throughout the Sanctuary (U.S. Department of Commerce, 1996),
45 and in the Dry Tortugas to enhance fisheries where positive results have been obtained after only
46

1 a few years (Ault *et al.*, 2006). Potential exists to use a range of options to identify bleaching
 2 resistant reefs in the Keys, from simply identifying the best remaining sites left and using a
 3 decision matrix based on factors that may confer resilience to establish priority sites for
 4 protection, to the Bayesian approach of Wooldridge and Done (2005). Only recently have coral
 5 community data been obtained at the relevant spatial scales and across multiple habitat types
 6 (Smith *et al.*, In Press). Whatever approach is used, the results are likely to include sites with
 7 high coral cover and abundance, high diversity, connectivity related to current regimes with the
 8 potential to transport larvae, and protection from local stressors including overfishing and
 9 pollution (Done, 1999; Salm, Smith, and Llewellyn, 2001; West, 2001; Hughes *et al.*, 2003).

10
 11 Interestingly, the theoretical framework that links protection against overfishing (to restore
 12 herbivores that then reduce algae that kill corals or prevent recruitment) using no-take marine
 13 reserves and the cascading effects that result and link to improved coral condition is hotly
 14 debated (Jackson *et al.*, 2001; Grigg *et al.*, 2005; Pandolfi *et al.*, 2005; Aronson and Precht,
 15 2006). This is perhaps surprising because of the strong intuitive sense such arguments make, but
 16 reserves also protect predators, so declines in herbivorous fish might occur, as opposed to
 17 increases. Also, data from field studies provide conflicting results on the role of herbivores.
 18 Mumby *et al.* (2006) showed that increased densities of herbivorous fish in a marine reserve
 19 reduced algal growth after mass bleaching caused extensive coral mortality, but such herbivore
 20 densities do not always increase after protection is provided (Mosquera *et al.*, 2000; Graham,
 21 Evans, and Russ, 2003; Micheli *et al.*, 2004; Robertson *et al.*, 2005). Further, there is widespread
 22 belief that the mass mortality of *Diadema antillarum*—a major grazer on reefs—in 1983–1984
 23 was a significant proximal cause of coral reef decline throughout the Caribbean. However, as
 24 reported in Aronson and Precht (2006) half the coral reef decline throughout the Caribbean
 25 reported by Gardner *et al.* (2003) occurred before the die-off of *D. antillarum*, and immediately
 26 after the die-off coral cover remained unchanged (Fig. 8.5) (Gardner *et al.*, 2003). Subsequent
 27 declines in cover throughout the region were due to coral bleaching (1987, 1997–1998) and
 28 disease. It is important to highlight this complexity because it emphasizes how much is unknown
 29 about basic ecological processes on coral reefs and consequently how much needs to be learned
 30 about whether no-take marine reserves work effectively to enhance resilience when disease and
 31 bleaching remain significant sources of coral mortality (Aronson and Precht, 2006).

32
 33
 34
 35 **Figure 8.5.** Total observed change in coral cover (%) across the Caribbean basin over the
 36 past 25 years (Gardner *et al.*, 2003). A. Coral cover (%) 1977-2001. Annual estimates (▲)
 37 are weighted means with 95% bootstrap confidence intervals. Also shown are unweighted
 38 estimates (●), unweighted mean coral cover with the Florida Keys Coral Reef Monitoring
 39 Project (1996-2001) omitted (x), and the number of studies each year (○). B. Year-on-year
 40 rate of change (mean $\Delta N \pm SE$) in coral cover (%) for all sites reporting two consecutive
 41 years of data 1975-2000 (●) and the number of studies for each two-year period (○).

42
 43 In the Florida Keys, marine protected areas date to 1960 for John Pennekamp Coral Reef State
 44 Park, 1975 for the Key Largo National Marine Sanctuary, 1981 for Looe Key National Marine
 45 Sanctuary, and 1990 for expansion of these sites to include 2,800 square nautical miles of coastal
 46 waters that are now designated as the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary. The Tortugas

1 Ecological Reserve was added in 2001, and six years later a 46-square-mile Research Natural
2 Area was also established within Dry Tortugas National Park (National Park Service, 2007).
3 While spatial resolution among habitat types from Miami to the Dry Tortugas is not as extensive
4 as in the Great Barrier Reef, work similar to Wooldridge and Done (2005) should be evaluated
5 for application to the Florida Keys. For example, a combination of retrospective sea-surface
6 temperature studies using NOAA Coral Reef Watch products, combined with *in situ* temperature
7 data, water quality monitoring data (e.g. Boyer and Briceño, 2006), and detailed site
8 characterizations (Miller, Swanson, and Chiappone, 2002) might help identify bleaching-
9 resistant sites (if temporally- and spatially-relevant sampling is conducted before, during, and
10 after a bleaching event), identify candidate sites for protection based on resilience criteria, and in
11 general validate the concept of marine reserve networks in the region as a management response
12 to coral bleaching threats.

13 14 **Geographic Range Extensions of Coral Reefs in Florida**

15 Coral reefs in south Florida represent the northern geographic limit of reef development in the
16 United States. It is reasonable to assume that some northward expansion of either the whole reef
17 community or individual species may occur as a result of warming climate. Indeed, such a
18 northward expansion may already be in progress, but caution is necessary before assigning too
19 much significance to what might be an anomalous event. Specifically, *Acropora cervicornis* was
20 discovered growing in large thickets off Fort Lauderdale in 1998 (Vargas-Ángel, Thomas, and
21 Hoke, 2003) and *A. palmata* was discovered off Pompano Beach in northern Broward county
22 (Precht and Aronson, 2004). It is possible that these populations—over 50 km northward of their
23 previously known northern limit—are a result of recent climate warming known to have
24 occurred in the western Atlantic (Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Levitus *et al.*, 2000; Barnett, Pierce,
25 and Schnur, 2001). It is also possible that these reefs represent a remnant population or a chance
26 recruitment event based on a short-term but favorable set of circumstances that will disappear
27 with the next hurricane, cold front, disease epidemic, or bleaching event. Still, the presence of
28 these acroporid reefs is suggestive of what might happen as climate warms. Interestingly, the
29 presence of these northern acroporid populations matches the previous northern extension of reef
30 development in the region during the middle Holocene (Lighty, Macintyre, and Stuckenrath,
31 1978), when sea surface temperatures were warmer. Reefs up to 10 m thick grew off Palm Beach
32 County in the middle Holocene (Lighty, Macintyre, and Stuckenrath, 1978) and when
33 temperatures started to cool 5,000 years before present reef development moved south to its
34 current location (Precht and Aronson, 2004).

35
36 Despite these northern extensions in the geographic distributions of corals seen in the fossil
37 record, predicting future geographic expansions in Florida is complicated by factors other than
38 temperature that influence coral reefs, including light, carbonate saturation state, pollution,
39 disease (Buddemeier, Kleypas, and Aronson, 2004), and a shift from a carbonate to siliciclastic
40 sedimentary regime along with increasing nutrient concentrations as latitude increases up the east
41 coast of Florida (Precht and Aronson, 2004). One thing, however, is certain: geographic shifts of
42 reefs in Florida that result from global warming will not mitigate existing factors that today
43 cause widespread local and regional coral reef decline (Precht and Aronson, 2004). Further, if we
44 assume that the reefs of the mid-Holocene were in better condition than today's reefs, they may
45 not prove to be a good analogue for predicting the future geographic trajectory of today's reefs.
46 Because corals in Florida are already severely impacted by disease, bleaching, pollution, and

1 overfishing, expansion at best will be severely limited compared to what might occur if the
2 ecosystem were intact.

3
4 At the global scale and across deep geological time, range extensions to higher latitudes occurred
5 for hard corals that survived the Cretaceous warming period (Kiessling, 2001; Kleypas, 2006),
6 and some coral species today that are found in the Red Sea and Persian Gulf can survive under
7 much greater temperature ranges than they experience throughout the Indo-Pacific (Coles and
8 Fadlallah, 1991). Both of these examples, however, probably reflect long-term adaptation by
9 natural selection and not short-term acclimatization (Kleypas, 2006). At shorter times scales
10 (decades), corals that survive rapid climate warming may be those that are able to quickly
11 colonize and survive at higher latitudes where maximum summer temperatures may be reduced
12 compared to their previous geographic range. An alternative to migration is the situation where
13 corals adapt to increasing temperatures at ecological time scales (decades), and there is some
14 evidence to suggest that this might occur (Guzmán and Cortés, 2001; Podestá and Glynn, 2001).
15 However, the ability to predict if corals will acclimate is complicated because absolute values
16 and adaptive potential are likely to vary across species (Ware, 1997; Hughes *et al.*, 2003;
17 Kleypas, 2006). Acclimation without range expansion is a topic of great significance related to
18 coral bleaching.

19
20 Another question related to the potential for coral reef migration to higher latitudes in Florida is
21 related to understanding factors that currently limit expansion northward. Cold-water
22 temperature tolerances for individual corals are not well known; however, their present-day
23 global distribution generally follows the 18 °C monthly minimum seawater isotherm (Kleypas,
24 McManus, and Mendez, 1999; Kleypas, Buddemeier, and Gattuso, 2001; Buddemeier, Kleypas,
25 and Aronson, 2004). South Florida is located between the 18 and 20 °C isotherm and is thus
26 significantly affected by severe winter cold fronts, especially for corals in shallow water (Jones,
27 1977; Burns, 1985; Walker, Rouse, and Huh, 1987). Well documented coral die-offs due to cold
28 water fronts have occurred repeatedly throughout the Florida Keys (Davis, 1982; Porter, Battey,
29 and Smith, 1982; Walker *et al.*, 1982; Roberts, Rouse, and Walker, 1983; Shinn, 1989); and as
30 far south as the Dry Tortugas (Porter, Battey, and Smith, 1982; Jaap and Hallock, 1990; Jaap and
31 Sargent, 1994). Porter and Tougas (2001) documented a decreasing trend in generic coral
32 diversity along the east coast of Florida, but a number of coral species extend well beyond the
33 18 °C isotherm with at least two species surviving as far north as North Carolina, likely due to the
34 influence of the Gulf Stream. Thus, climate warming that has the potential to influence the
35 impact of winter cold fronts may influence the range expansion of corals in Florida.

36
37 Finally, the above examples have focused mostly on the acroporid corals, which represent only
38 two species out of more than forty that are found regionally (Jaap, 1984). Obviously, when
39 considering range expansion of the total reef system, and not just two coral species, models
40 designed to optimize or anticipate management actions that conserve existing habitat or predict
41 future locations for habitat protection are likely to be exceedingly complicated. In Florida,
42 assuming that reefs remain in sufficiently good condition to act as seed populations for range
43 expansion, one management action to anticipate the effects of climate change would be to protect
44 habitats similar to those that thrived during the middle Holocene when coral reefs flourished
45 north of their current distribution (Lighty, Macintyre, and Stuckenrath, 1978). However, existing
46 declines in the acroporids throughout Florida and the Caribbean (Gardner *et al.*, 2003; Precht and

1 Miller, 2006) suggest that at least for these two species, the major framework building species in
2 the region, expansion will not occur unless factors such as disease and coral bleaching are
3 mitigated.

4 **8.4.2 Case Study: The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park**

5 **8.4.2.1 Introduction**

6 The Great Barrier Reef (GBR) is a maze of reefs and islands spanning an area of 348,000 km²
7 off the Queensland coast in northeast Australia (Fig. 8.6). It spans 14 degrees of latitude, making
8 it the largest coral reef ecosystem in the world and one of the richest in biological diversity. The
9 GBR supports 1,500 species of fish, 350 species of hard corals, more than 4,000 species of
10 mollusks, 500 species of algae, six of the world's seven species of marine turtles, 24 species of
11 seabirds, more than 30 species of whales and dolphins, and the dugong. The GBR was chosen as
12 a case study because it is a large marine protected area that has moderate representation of no-
13 take areas (33%) and has been under a management regime since 1975.

14
15
16

17 **Figure 8.6.** Map of the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park showing the adjacent catchment in
18 Queensland. Modified from Haynes (2001) and courtesy of the Great Barrier Reef Marine
19 Park Authority.

20

21 The GBR already appears to have been affected by climate change. The first reports of coral
22 bleaching in the GBR appeared in the literature in the 1980s (Oliver, 1985) and have continued
23 to increase in frequency since then (Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Done *et al.*, 2003). Coral-coring
24 work done at the Australian Institute of Marine Science detected the earliest growth hiatus
25 associated with mass coral bleaching in 1998 (Lough, 2007). There have been nine bleaching
26 events on the GBR, with three major events in the last decade correlating with elevated sea
27 temperatures and causing damage to parts of the reef. These early signs of climate change, and
28 the extensive research and monitoring data that are available for the GBR, make it a suitable case
29 study for this report.

30

31 The conservation values of the GBR are recognized in its status as a World Heritage Area (listed
32 in 1981), and its resources are protected within the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park. The
33 enactment of the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Act in 1975 established the legal framework for
34 protecting these values. The goal of the legislation is “...to provide for the protection, wise use,
35 understanding and enjoyment of the Great Barrier Reef in perpetuity through the care and
36 development of the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park.”

37 **8.4.2.2 Managing the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park**

38 The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority has management strategies in place to address
39 current stresses on the GBR. Stressors include terrestrial inputs of sediment, nutrients, and
40 pesticides from coastal catchments; fisheries extraction; tourism and recreational activities; and
41 changes to coastal hydrology as a result of coastal development and climate change.
42 Sustainability of the environmental and social values of the Great Barrier Reef depend largely

1 (and in most cases, entirely) on a healthy, self-perpetuating ecosystem. Reducing pressures on
2 this system has been a focus of management activities over the last decade.

3
4 The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park was rezoned in 2003 to increase the area of highly protected
5 no-take zones to 33%, with at least 20% protected in each habitat bioregion. These no-take areas
6 aim to conserve biodiversity, increasing the potential of maintaining an intact ecosystem, with
7 larger no-take areas including more representative habitats (Day *et al.*, 2002; Day *et al.*, 2004).

8 9 **Current Approaches to Management**

10 There are 26 major catchments that drain into the GBR (Fig. 8.6) covering an area of 425,964
11 km². Cropping (primarily of sugar cane), grazing, heavy industry and urban settlement are the
12 main land uses. The *Reef Water Quality Protection Plan* (The State of Queensland and
13 Commonwealth of Australia, 2003) is a joint state and federal initiative that aims to *halt and*
14 *reverse the decline in the quality of water entering the Reef by 2013*. Under this initiative, diffuse
15 sources of pollution are targeted through a range of voluntary and incentive-driven strategies to
16 address water quality entering the GBR from activities in the catchments.

17
18 Important commercial fisheries in the GBR include trawling that mainly targets prawns and reef-
19 based hook-and-line that targets coral trout and sweetlip emperor, inshore fin fish, and three crab
20 fisheries (spanner, blue, and mud). None of these fisheries is considered overexploited; however,
21 there is considerable unused (latent) effort in both the commercial and recreational sectors.
22 Commercial fisheries contribute A\$251 million to the Australian economy (Access Economics
23 and Vecchia, 2007). Fisheries management is undertaken by the Queensland Government and
24 includes a range of measures such as limited entry, management plans, catch and effort limits,
25 permits, and industry accreditation. Recreational activities (including fishing) contribute A\$623
26 million per annum to the region (Access Economics and Vecchia, 2007), and recreational fishing
27 is subject to size and bag limits for many species.

28
29 Over 1 million tourists visit the GBR annually, contributing A\$6.1 billion to the Australian
30 economy (Access Economics and Vecchia, 2007). The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority
31 manages tourism using permits, zoning, and other planning tools such as management plans and
32 site plans (Smith *et al.*, 2004). Visitation is concentrated in the Cairns and Whitsunday Island
33 areas, and an eco-certification program encourages best practices and sustainable tourism (Skeat,
34 2003).

35
36 As one of the fastest growing regions in Australia, the GBR coast is being extensively developed
37 through the addition of tourist resorts, urban subdivisions, marinas, and major infrastructure such
38 as roads and sewage treatment plants. All levels of government regulate coastal development
39 depending on the scale and potential impacts of the development. Local government uses local
40 planning schemes and permits, state government uses the Integrated Planning Act (1997), and in
41 the case of significant developments, the federal government uses the Environment Protection
42 and Biodiversity Conservation Act (1999) to assess the environmental impacts of proposals.
43 These efforts have resulted in an increase in biodiversity protection, a multi-stakeholder
44 agreement to address water quality, and a well-managed, multiple-use marine protected area.

45 46 **Vulnerability of the Great Barrier Reef to Climate Change**

1 Despite these landmark initiatives, the ability of the ecosystem to sustain provision of goods and
2 services is under renewed threat from climate change (Wilkinson, 2004). Climate change is
3 rapidly emerging as one of the most significant challenges facing the GBR and its management.
4 While MPA managers cannot directly control climate, and climate change cannot be fully
5 averted, there is an urgent need to identify possibilities for reducing climate-induced stresses on
6 the GBR (Marshall and Schuttenberg, 2006b). The GBR Climate Change Response Program has
7 undertaken an assessment of the vulnerability of the GBR to climate change and is developing
8 strategies to enhance ecosystem resilience, sustain regional communities and industries that rely
9 on the GBR, and provide supportive policy and collaborations.

10
11 The Climate Change Response Program used regional GBR climate projections to assess the
12 vulnerability of species, habitats, and key processes to climate change. Some relevant projections
13 emerged. Regional GBR sea temperatures have increased by 0.4°C since 1850 and are projected
14 to increase by a further 1–3°C above present temperatures by 2100 (Fig. 8.7). Sea level rise is
15 projected to be 30–60 cm by 2100, and ocean chemistry is projected to decrease in pH by 0.4–0.5
16 units by 2100 (Lough, 2007). There is less certainty about: changes to tropical cyclones, with a
17 5–12% increase in wind speed projected; rainfall and river flow, with projected increases in
18 intensity of droughts and rainfall events; and ENSOs, which will continue to be a source of high
19 interannual variability (Lough, 2007).

20
21
22
23 **Figure 8.7.** Sea surface temperature (SST) projections for the Great Barrier Reef (GBR)
24 (Lough, 2007).

25 26 **Coral Bleaching**

27 The key threats to the GBR ecosystem from climate change manifest in impacts to all
28 components of the ecosystem, from species to populations to habitats and key processes.
29 Although coral reefs represent only 6% of the Great Barrier Reef, they are an iconic component
30 of the system and support a diversity of life. Unusually warm summers caused significant coral
31 bleaching events in the GBR in 1998, 2002, and 2006. More than 50% of reefs were affected by
32 bleaching in the summers of 1998 and 2002, following persistent high sea temperatures
33 throughout the GBR. Fortunately, temperatures cooled soon enough to avoid catastrophic
34 impacts, yet approximately 5% of reefs suffered long-term damage in each year. Stressful
35 temperatures were confined to the southern parts of the GBR in the summer of 2006 and
36 persisted long enough to cause over 40% of the corals to die. Future warming of the world's
37 oceans is projected to increase the frequency and severity of coral bleaching events, making
38 further damage to the GBR inevitable (Hoegh-Guldberg *et al.*, 2007). Continued monitoring
39 efforts—such as those proposed in the GBR Coral Bleaching Response Plan—will be essential
40 for understanding this ecosystem change.

41 42 **Impacts to Species**

43 Mass mortalities of seabirds and failures of nesting (death of all chicks) have been observed at
44 several key seabird rookeries during anomalously warm summers on the GBR (coinciding with
45 mass coral bleaching). New research is showing that provisioning failure, resulting when adults
46 have to travel too far to find food for their chicks, causes these deaths (Congdon *et al.*, 2007).

1 This is thought to be due to decreased availability of food fish caused by changes in circulation
2 patterns (location and depth of cool water bodies preferred by these fish). Marine turtles are also
3 at risk from climate change, with increasing air temperatures projected to alter the gender ratio of
4 turtle hatchlings; during periods of extremely high temperatures in the past, complete nesting
5 failures have been observed. Sea level rise also poses a threat to seabirds and turtles, as nesting
6 islands and beaches become inundated and suitability of alternative beaches is reduced by coastal
7 development.

8
9 Fish, shark, and ray populations will be most affected by reductions in reef habitat, with resultant
10 decreases in diversity and abundance and changes in community composition (Munday *et al.*,
11 2007; Chin *et al.*, 2007). Conversely, small increases in sea temperature may benefit larval fish
12 by accelerating embryonic and larval growth and enhancing larval swimming ability. This shows
13 that climate change will not affect all organisms equally, and some populations or groups (such
14 as macroalgae) may in fact benefit by increasing their range or growth rate. However, this will
15 change the distributions of species as they migrate southward or offshore. This in turn would
16 likely result in population explosions of fast growing, ‘weed-like’ species to the detriment of
17 other species, thereby reducing species diversity. As species and habitats decline, so too does the
18 productivity of the system and its ability to respond to future change.

21 **Impacts to Key Processes**

22 The reef matrix itself is at risk from climate change through loss of coral—not only from coral
23 bleaching but also physical damage from more intense storms and cyclones and reduced coral
24 calcification rates as ocean pH decreases. This is critical from the perspective of the structural
25 integrity of the GBR as well as the services reefs provide to other organisms, such as habitat and
26 food.

27
28 Primary productivity, through changes to microbial, plankton, and seagrass communities, is
29 likely to be affected as changes in the carbon cycle occur. Changes in rainfall patterns, runoff,
30 and sea temperature also are likely to change plankton, seagrass, and microbial communities.
31 These changes reduce trophic efficiency, which decreases food quality and quantity for higher
32 trophic levels with a resultant decline in abundance of animals at higher trophic levels.
33 Productivity is also likely to be sensitive to changes in ocean circulation as nutrient transport
34 patterns change, thereby reducing nutrient availability and primary production.

35
36 Connectivity is at risk from changes to ocean circulation patterns and ENSO; as ocean currents
37 and upwelling are affected, so too will be the hydrological cycles that transport material
38 latitudinally and across the shelf. Connectivity will also be affected by coastal changes such as
39 sea level rise and altered rainfall regimes, which are likely to have the most influence on coastal
40 connectivity between estuaries and the inshore lagoon of the GBR. As temperature-induced
41 stratification reduces wind-driven upwelling, offshore hydrological cycles are affected,
42 potentially reducing connectivity between offshore reefs. All these changes could interact to
43 affect the survival and dispersal patterns of larvae between reefs.

44
45 As biodiversity and connectivity are lost, the system becomes less complex, which initiates a
46 cascade of events that results in long-term change. Simplified systems are generally less resilient

1 and therefore less able to absorb shocks and disturbances while continuing to maintain their
2 original levels of function. Reducing biodiversity and connectivity reduces the number of
3 components and networks that can buffer against poor water quality, overfishing, and climate
4 change. Maintaining a healthy ecosystem requires that ecological processes be preserved and that
5 there is sufficient biodiversity to respond to changes. Larger marine protected areas that include
6 representative habitats and protect biodiversity and connectivity will be more resilient to climate
7 change into the future (Roberts *et al.*, 2006).

8 **8.4.2.3 Adapting Management to Climate Change**

9 In the face of these potential climate change impacts, the GBR Climate Change Response
10 Program developed a Climate Change Action Plan in 2006. The action plan has five main
11 objectives:

- 12
- 13 1. Address climate change knowledge gaps
- 14 2. Communicate with and educate communities about climate change implications for the GBR
- 15 3. Support greenhouse gas emissions mitigation strategies in the GBR region
- 16 4. Enhance resilience of the GBR ecosystem to climate change
- 17 5. Support GBR communities and industries to adapt to climate change

18
19 Key strategies within the action plan include assessing the vulnerability of the GBR ecological
20 and social systems to climate change; developing an agency-wide communication strategy for
21 climate change; facilitating greenhouse gas emissions reductions using the Reef Guardian
22 incentive project; undertaking resilience mapping for the entire GBR and reviewing management
23 arrangements in light of the relative resilience of areas of the GBR; and working with industries
24 to promote industry-led initiatives to address climate change.

25 **Addressing information gaps**

26
27 The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority (GBRMPA) has been working with scientists to
28 assess the vulnerability of the different components of the GBR ecosystem, industries, and
29 communities to climate change. A resultant publication identifies the key vulnerabilities for all
30 components of the ecosystem, from plankton to corals to marine mammals, and makes
31 management recommendations that aim to maximize the ability of the system to resist or adapt to
32 climate changes (Johnson and Marshall, 2007). Examples of management recommendations
33 include addressing water quality in inshore areas where primary productivity is high (*e.g.*, areas
34 with extensive seagrass meadows or with critical plankton aggregations). Another example is
35 conserving landward areas for migration of mangroves and wetlands as sea level rises, including
36 possible land acquisitions and removal of barrier structures. Finally, protecting sites of specific
37 importance from coral bleaching through shading or water mixing in summer months is an
38 option. Reducing other impacts on critical habitats or species is also recommended (*e.g.*,
39 improving shark fisheries management, reducing disturbance of seabird nesting sites during
40 breeding season, reducing boat traffic and entanglement of marine mammals, protecting key
41 turtle nesting beaches, enhancing resilience of coral reefs by improving water quality, protecting
42 herbivores, and managing other destructive activities such as anchoring and snorkeling). These
43 recommendations will be used to review existing management strategies and incorporate climate
44 change considerations where needed.

45

1 **Raising Awareness and Changing Behavior**

2 The Climate Change Response Program developed a communication strategy in 2004 that aims
3 to increase public awareness of the implications of climate change for the GBR. This strategy is
4 being amended to include all GBRMPA activities and ensure that all groups consistently present
5 key climate change messages. This is particularly important for groups that are addressing those
6 factors that confer resilience to the ecosystem, such as water quality and fisheries. The key
7 messages of the agency-wide communication strategy are that climate change is real, climate
8 change is happening now, climate change is affecting the GBR, the GBRMPA is working to
9 address climate change, and individuals' actions can make a difference.

10
11 The Reef Guardian program is a partnership with schools and local governments in GBR
12 catchments. The program is voluntary and provides resources for schools and councils to
13 incorporate sustainability initiatives into their everyday business. A sustainability and climate
14 change syllabus has been developed for primary schools and will teach students about climate
15 change and the implications for the GBR, as well as provide greenhouse gas emission reductions
16 projects for the schools. The local council participants have been provided with similar
17 information, and in order to be a recognized Reef Guardian, a council must implement a
18 minimum number of sustainability modules. This partnership currently has 180 schools and is
19 incrementally working toward having 20 local councils participating by 2010.

20
21 **Toward Resilience-Based Management**

22 One of the most significant strategies that coral reef managers can employ in the face of climate
23 change is to enhance the resilience of the ecosystem (West *et al.*, 2006). Working with
24 researchers, the Climate Change Response Program has identified resilience factors that include
25 water quality, coral cover, community composition, larval supply, recruitment success,
26 herbivory, disease, and effective management. These will be used to identify areas of the GBR
27 that have high resilience to climate change and should be protected from other stresses, as well
28 as areas that have low resilience and may require active management to enhance their resilience.
29 Recognized research institutes have provided essential science that has formed the basis of this
30 project and will continue collaborations between GBRMPA and researchers. Ultimately, it is
31 hoped that this information can be used to review existing management regimes (such as
32 planning and permit tools) to protect areas with high resilience as source sites and actively work
33 in areas with low resilience to improve their condition.

34
35 **Partnering with Stakeholders**

36 The GBRMPA has been working with the GBR tourism industry to facilitate development of the
37 GBR Tourism and Climate Change Action Strategy. This initiative was the result of a workshop
38 with representative tourism operators that generated the GBR Tourism and Climate Change
39 Action Group. This industry-led group has developed the action strategy to identify how climate
40 change will affect the industry, how the industry can respond, and what options are available for
41 the industry to become climate sustainable. The marine tourism industry considers reef-based
42 activities particularly susceptible to the effects of climate change. Loss of coral from bleaching
43 and changes to the abundance and location of fish, marine mammals, and other iconic species are
44 likely to have the greatest impact on the industry. Increasing intensity of cyclones and storms
45 will affect trip scheduling, industry seasonality, tourism infrastructure (particularly on islands),
46 and future tourism industry development. Potential strategies for adapting to climate change

1 include product diversification, new marketing initiatives, and targeting eco-accredited
2 programs.

4 **Managing Uncertainty**

5 A critical component of all these strategies is the ability to manage flexibly and respond to
6 change rapidly. This is important to enable managers to shift focus as new information becomes
7 available or climate impact events occur. In reviewing existing management regimes, there will
8 be a focus on ways of making management more flexible and drawing on management tools as
9 they are needed. This type of adaptive management is essential for addressing the uncertain and
10 shifting climate change impacts on the GBR. Given the scale of the issue and the fact that the
11 cause and many of the solutions lie outside the jurisdiction of GBRMPA managers, effective
12 partnerships with other levels of government and stakeholders to work cooperatively on climate
13 change have been developed and will continue to be integral to adapting management to the
14 climate change challenge.

15 **8.4.3 Case Study: The Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian Islands) Marine** 16 **National Monument**

17 **8.4.3.1 Introduction**

18 The Hawaiian Islands are one of the most isolated archipelagos in the world and stretch for over
19 2,500 km, from the island of Hawaii in the southeast to Kure Atoll (the world’s highest-latitude
20 atoll) in the northwest (Grigg, 1982; 1988; Friedlander *et al.*, 2005). Beginning at Nihoa and
21 Mokumanamana Islands (~7 and 10 million years old, respectively) and extending to Midway
22 and Kure Atolls (~28 million years old), the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) represent
23 the older portion of the emergent archipelago (Grigg, 1988). The majority of the islets, shoals,
24 and atolls are low-lying and remain uninhabited, although Midway, Kure, Laysan Island, and
25 French Frigate Shoals have all been occupied for extended periods over the last century by
26 various government agencies (Shallenberger, 2006). Because of their location in the central
27 Pacific, the NWHI are influenced by large-wave events resulting from extratropical storms
28 passing across the North Pacific each winter that have a profound influence on the geology and
29 biology of the region (Grigg, 1998; Dollar and Grigg, 2004; Jokiel *et al.*, 2004; Friedlander *et al.*,
30 2005).

31 **Ecosystem Structure**

32 With coral reefs around the world in decline (Jackson *et al.*, 2001; Bellwood *et al.*, 2004;
33 Pandolfi *et al.*, 2005), it is extremely rare to be able to examine a coral reef ecosystem that is
34 relatively free of human influence and consisting of a wide range of healthy coral reef habitats.
35 The remoteness and limited reef fishing and other human activities that have occurred in the
36 NWHI have resulted in minimal anthropogenic impacts (Friedlander and DeMartini, 2002;
37 Friedlander *et al.*, 2005). The NWHI therefore provide a unique opportunity to assess how a
38 “natural” coral reef ecosystem functions in the absence of major localized human intervention.
39

40
41 One of the most striking and unique components of the NWHI ecosystem is the abundance and
42 dominance of large apex predators such as sharks and jacks (Friedlander and DeMartini, 2002;
43 DeMartini, Friedlander, and Holzwarth, 2005). These predators exert a strong top-down control
44 on the ecosystem (DeMartini, Friedlander, and Holzwarth, 2005; DeMartini and Friedlander,

1 2006) and have been depleted in most other locations around the world (Myers and Worm, 2003;
2 2005). Differences in fish biomass between the main Hawaiian Islands (MHI) and NWHI
3 represent both near-extirpation of apex predators and heavy exploitation of lower-trophic-level
4 fishes on shallow reefs of the MHI (Friedlander and DeMartini, 2002; DeMartini and
5 Friedlander, 2006).

6
7 The geographic isolation of the Hawaiian Islands has resulted in some of the highest endemism
8 of any tropical marine ecosystem on earth (Jokiel, 1987; Kay and Palumbi, 1987; Randall, 1998)
9 (Fig. 8.8). Some of these endemics are a dominant component of the community, resulting in a
10 unique ecosystem that has extremely high conservation value (DeMartini and Friedlander, 2004;
11 Maragos *et al.*, 2004). With species loss in the sea accelerating, the irreplaceability of these
12 species makes Hawaii an important biodiversity hotspot (Roberts *et al.*, 2002; Allen, 2002;
13 DeMartini and Friedlander, 2006). The coral assemblage in the NWHI contains a large number
14 of endemics (~30%), including at least seven species of acroporid corals (Maragos *et al.*, 2004).
15 Acroporids are the dominant reef-building corals in the Indo-Pacific, but are absent from the
16 MHI (Grigg, 1981; Grigg, Wells, and Wallace, 1981). Kure Atoll is the world's most northern
17 atoll and is referred to as the Darwin Point, where coral growth, subsidence, and erosion balance
18 one another (Grigg, 1982).

19
20
21
22 **Figure 8.8.** Endemic species from the Hawaiian Islands. A. Masked angelfish,
23 *Genicanthus personatus* (Photo: J. Watt), B. Rice coral, *Montipora capitata*, and finger
24 coral, *Porites compressa* (photo: C. Hunter), C. Hawaiian hermit crab, *Calcinus laurentae*
25 (photo: S. Godwin), D. Red alga, *Acrosymphtyon brainardii* (photo: P. Vroom).

26
27 The NWHI represent important habitat for a number of threatened and endangered species. The
28 Hawaiian monk seal is one of the most critically endangered marine mammals in the United
29 States (1,300 individuals) and depends almost entirely on the islands of the NWHI for breeding
30 and the surrounding reefs for sustenance (Antonelis *et al.*, 2006). Over 90% of all sub-adult and
31 adult Hawaiian green sea turtles found throughout Hawaii inhabit the NWHI (Balazs and
32 Chaloupka, 2006). Additionally, seabird colonies in the NWHI constitute one of the largest and
33 most important assemblages of seabirds in the world (Friedlander *et al.*, 2005).

34
35 In contrast to the MHI, the reefs of the NWHI are relatively free of major human influences. The
36 few alien species known from the NWHI are restricted to the anthropogenic habitats of Midway
37 Atoll and French Frigate Shoals (Friedlander *et al.*, 2005). Disease levels in corals in the NWHI
38 were much lower than those reported from other locations in the Indo-Pacific (Aeby, 2006).

39 **Existing Stressors**

40 Although limited in scale, a number of past and present human activities have negatively
41 affected the NWHI. Marine debris is currently one of the largest threats to the reefs of the NWHI
42 (Boland *et al.*, 2006; Dameron *et al.*, 2007). Marine debris has caused entanglement of a number
43 of protected species and damage to benthic habitats and is a potential vector for invasive species
44 in the NWHI (Dameron *et al.*, 2007). An extensive debris removal effort between 1999 and 2003
45 has now surpassed the accumulation rate, resulting in a reduction in overall accumulation levels
46

1 (Boland *et al.*, 2006). However, much of this debris originates thousands of kilometers away in
2 the north Pacific, making the solution to the problem both a national and international issue.
3 Other direct human stresses such as pollution, coastal development, and ship groundings, have
4 had negative consequences in localized areas but have been limited to a small number of
5 locations.

6
7 The NWHI are influenced by a dynamic environment that includes large annual water
8 temperature fluctuations, seasonally high wave energy, and strong inter-annual and inter-decadal
9 variations in ocean productivity (Polovina *et al.*, 1994; Grigg, 1998; Polovina *et al.*, 2001;
10 Friedlander *et al.*, 2005). As a result of these influences, natural stressors play an important role
11 in the structure of the NWHI ecosystem. Large swell events generated every winter commonly
12 produce waves up to 10–12 m in vertical height and between 15–20 m about once every decade
13 (Grigg *et al.*, 2007). This limits the growth and abundance of coral communities, particularly on
14 the north and western sides of all the islands. The best-developed reefs on all the islands exist
15 either in the lagoons or off southwestern exposures (Grigg, 1982).

16
17 Summer sea surface temperatures (SSTs) along the island chain are generally similar, peaking at
18 about 28°C; however, winter SSTs are much cooler at the northern end of the chain, dipping
19 down to 17°C in some years (Grigg, 1982; Grigg *et al.*, 2007). This represents a 10°C intra-
20 annual difference at the northern end of the chain, while that at the southern end of the NWHI is
21 only half as great: 5°C (22–27°C). Compared with most reef ecosystems around the globe, the
22 annual fluctuations of SST of about 10°C at these northerly atolls is extremely high. Cooler
23 water temperatures to the north restrict the growth and distribution of a number of coral species
24 (Grigg, 1982). In addition, the biogeographic distribution of many fish species in the NWHI is
25 influenced by differences in water temperatures along the archipelago (DeMartini and
26 Friedlander, 2004; Mundy, 2005).

27 **Climate Sensitivity**

28 The NWHI ecosystem is sensitive to natural climate variability at a number of spatial and
29 temporal scales. The Pacific Decadal Oscillation (PDO) results in changes in ocean productivity
30 at large spatial and long temporal scales and has been attributed to changes in monk seal pup
31 survival, sea bird fledging success, and spiny lobster recruitment in the NWHI (Polovina *et al.*,
32 1994; Polovina, Mitchem, and Evans, 1995). Inter-annual variation in the Transition Zone
33 Chlorophyll Front is also known to affect the distribution and survival of a number of species in
34 the NWHI (Polovina *et al.*, 1994; Polovina *et al.*, 2001).

35
36
37 Because of their high latitude location in the central Pacific, the NWHI were thought to be one of
38 the last places in the world to experience coral bleaching (Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999). Hawaiian
39 reefs were unaffected by the 1998 mass bleaching event that affected much of the Indo-Pacific
40 region (Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Reaser, Pomerance, and Thomas, 2000; Jokiel and Brown,
41 2004). The first documented bleaching event in the MHI was reported in 1996 (Jokiel and
42 Brown, 2004). The NWHI were affected by mass coral bleaching in 2002 and again in 2004
43 (Aeby *et al.*, 2003; Kenyon *et al.*, 2006). Bleaching was most acute at the three northern-most
44 atolls (Pearl and Hermes, Midway, and Kure) and was most severe on backreef habitats (Kenyon
45 and Brainard, 2006). Of the three coral genera that predominate at these atolls, *Montipora* and
46 *Pocillopora* spp. were most affected by bleaching, with lesser incidences observed in *Porites*

1 (Kenyon and Brainard, 2006). The occurrence of two mass bleaching episodes in three years
2 lends credence to the projection of increased frequency of bleaching with climate change.

3
4 SST data derived from both remotely sensed satellite observations (Fig. 8.9a) as well as in situ
5 Coral Reef Early Warning System (CREWS) buoys suggest that prolonged, elevated SSTs
6 combined with a prolonged period of anomalously light wind speed led to decreased wind and
7 wave mixing of the upper ocean (Hoeke et al., 2006) (Fig. 8.9b). The reefs to the southeast of the
8 archipelago show smaller positive temperature anomalies compared with the reefs towards the
9 northwest. Research and monitoring efforts should target this pattern to better understand
10 dispersal, bleaching, and other events that might be affected by it.

11
12
13
14 **Figure 8.9.** a) NOAA Pathfinder SST anomaly composite during summer 2002 period of
15 NWHI elevated temperatures, July 28–August 29. b) NASA/JPL Quikscat winds (wind
16 stress overlaid by wind vector arrows) composite during summer 2002 period of
17 increasing SSTs, July 16–August 13. The Hawaii Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) is
18 indicated with a heavy black line; all island shorelines in the archipelago are also plotted
19 (adapted from Hoeke et al., 2006).

20 21 **Potential Impacts of Climate Change**

22 Climate change may increase the intensity of storm events as well as result in changes in ocean
23 temperature, circulation patterns, and water chemistry (Cabanes, Cazenave, and Le Provost,
24 2001; Houghton *et al.*, 2001; Caldeira and Wickett, 2003). Warmer temperatures in Hawaii have
25 been shown to cause bleaching mortality (Jokiel and Coles, 1990) and negatively affect
26 fertilization and development of corals (Krupp, Hollingsworth, and Peterka, 2006). Annual
27 spawning of some species in Hawaii occurs at temperatures near the upper limit for reproduction
28 (Krupp, Hollingsworth, and Peterka, 2006), so increases in ocean temperature related to climate
29 change may have a profound effect on coral populations by causing reproductive failure. The
30 rate and scale at which bleaching has been increasing in recent decades (Glynn, 1993) points to
31 the likelihood of future bleaching events in Hawaii (Jokiel and Coles, 1990).

32
33 Coral disease is currently low in the NWHI (Aeby, 2006), but increases in the frequency and
34 intensity of bleaching events will stress corals and make them more susceptible to disease
35 (Harvell *et al.*, 1999; Harvell *et al.*, 2002). Acroporid corals are prone to bleaching and disease
36 (Willis, Page, and Dinsdale, 2004) and are restricted in range and habitat within the Hawaiian
37 Archipelago to a few core reefs in the NWHI (Grigg, 1981; Grigg, Wells, and Wallace, 1981;
38 Maragos *et al.*, 2004). This combination could lead to the extinction of this genus from Hawaii if
39 mortality associated with climate change becomes severe.

40
41 Most of the emergent land in the NWHI is low-lying, highly vulnerable to inundation from storm
42 waves, and therefore vulnerable to sea-level rise (Baker, Littnan, and Johnston, 2006). The
43 limited amount of emergent land in the NWHI is critical habitat for the endangered Hawaiian
44 monk seal (Antonelis *et al.*, 2006), the threatened green sea turtle (Balazs and Chaloupka, 2006),
45 and numerous terrestrial organisms and land birds that are found nowhere else on Earth (Rauzon,
46 2001). The emergent land in the NWHI may shrink by as much as 65% with a 48 cm rise in sea

1 level (Baker, Littnan, and Johnston, 2006). Efforts such as translocation or habitat alteration
2 might be necessary if these species are to be saved from extinction.

3
4 At the northern end of the chain, lower coral diversity is linked to lower winter temperatures and
5 lower annual solar radiation (Grigg, 1982). Increases in ocean temperature could therefore
6 change the distribution of corals and other organisms that might currently be limited by lower
7 temperatures. Many shallow-water fish species that are adapted to warmer water are restricted
8 from occurring in the NWHI by winter temperatures that can be as much as 7°C cooler than the
9 MHI (Mundy, 2005). Conversely, some shallow-water species are adapted to cooler water and
10 can be found in deeper waters at the southern end of the archipelago. This phenomenon—known
11 as tropical submergence—is exemplified by species such as the yellowfin soldierfish (*Myripristis*
12 *chrysonemus*), the endemic Hawaiian grouper (*Epinephelus quernus*), and the masked angelfish
13 (*Genicanthus personatus*), which are found in shallower water at Midway and/or Kure atolls, but
14 are restricted to deeper depths in the MHI (Randall *et al.*, 1993; DeMartini and Friedlander,
15 2004; Mundy, 2005).

16 **Level/Degree of Management**

17 Administrative jurisdiction over the islands and marine waters is shared by NOAA/NMSP, U.S.
18 Fish and Wildlife Service, and the State of Hawaii. Eight of the 10 NWHI (except Kure and
19 Midway Atolls) have been protected by what is now the Hawaiian Islands National Wildlife
20 Refuge (HINWR) established by President Theodore Roosevelt in 1909. The Northwestern
21 Hawaiian Islands Coral Reef Ecosystem Reserve was created by Executive Orders 13178 and
22 13196 in December 2000 and amended by Executive Order 13196 in January of 2001 to include
23 the marine waters and submerged lands extending 1,200 nautical miles long and 100 nautical
24 miles wide from Nihoa Island to Kure Atoll.

25
26
27 In June 2006, nearly 140,000 square miles of the marine environment in the NWHI was
28 designated as the Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian Islands) Marine National
29 Monument (PMNM). This action provided immediate and permanent protection for the resources
30 of the NWHI and established a management structure that requires extensive collaboration and
31 coordination among the three primary co-trustee agencies: the State of Hawaii, the U.S. Fish and
32 Wildlife Service, and NOAA.

33
34 Proclamation 8031 states that the monument will:

- 35 • Preserve access for Native Hawaiian cultural activities;
- 36 • Provide for carefully regulated educational and scientific activities;
- 37 • Enhance visitation in a special area around Midway Island;
- 38 • Prohibit unauthorized access to the monument;
- 39 • Phase out commercial fishing over a five-year period; and
- 40 • Ban other types of resource extraction and dumping of waste.

41
42 Preservation areas have been established in the PMNM in sensitive areas around all the emergent
43 reefs, islands, and atolls. In the future, all vessels issued permits to operate in the PMNM will be
44 required to carry approved Vessel Monitoring Systems (VMS).

45 **Program of Monitoring and Research**

1 Long-term monitoring relevant to climate change has been conducted in the NWHI dating back
2 to the 1970s by a variety of agencies (Griggs, 2006). Since 2000, a collaborative interagency
3 monitoring program led by the Coral Reef Ecosystem Division (CRED) of the NOAA Pacific
4 Islands Science Center has conducted integrated assessment and monitoring of coral reef
5 ecosystems in the NWHI and throughout the U.S. Pacific (Wadell, 2005; Friedlander *et al.*,
6 2005). In conjunction with various state, federal, and academic partners, this program has
7 integrated ecological studies with environmental data to develop a comprehensive ecosystem-
8 based program of assessment and monitoring of U.S. Pacific coral reef ecosystems.

9
10 Ocean currents are measured and monitored in the NWHI using shipboard acoustic Doppler
11 current profilers (ADCP), Surface Velocity Program (SVP) current drifters, and APEX profiling
12 drifters (Friedlander *et al.*, 2005; Firing and Brainard, 2006). Spatial maps of ocean currents in
13 the vicinity of the NWHI are also computed from satellite observations of sea surface height
14 from the TOPEX-Poseidon and JASON altimetric satellites (Polovina, Kleiber, and Kobayashi,
15 1999). Moored ADCPs have been deployed by CRED at several locations to examine temporal
16 variability of ocean currents over submerged banks and reef habitats in the NWHI.

17
18 Because of the significant influence of temperature on coral reef ecosystem health, observations
19 of temperature in the NWHI are collected by a wide array of instruments and platforms,
20 including satellite remote sensing (AVHRR) of SST (Smith and Reynolds, 2004), moored
21 surface buoys and subsurface temperature recorders, closely spaced shallow water conductivity-
22 temperature-depth profiles (CTD casts) in nearshore reef habitats, broadly spaced shipboard deep
23 water CTD casts to depths of 500 m, and satellite-tracked SVP drifters. These data are integrated
24 in the Coral Reef Ecosystem Integrated Observing System (CREIOS) as described below.

25 **8.4.3.2 Managing the Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument**

26 **Current Approaches to Management and How Climate Change is Being Addressed**

27 Over the past several years, the NOAA Coral Reef Conservation Program has established the
28 Coral Reef Ecosystem Integrated Observing System (CREIOS), which is a cross-cutting
29 collaboration between four NOAA Line Offices (NMFS, OAR, NESDIS, and NOS) focused on
30 mapping, monitoring, and observing ecological and environmental conditions of U.S. coral reefs.
31 At present, the ocean observing system in the NWHI consists of surface buoys measuring SST,
32 salinity, wind, atmospheric pressure, and air temperature (enhanced systems also measure
33 ultraviolet-B (UV-B) and photosynthetically available radiation); surface SST buoys; subsurface
34 Ocean Data Platforms measuring ocean current profiles, wave energy and direction, temperature
35 and salinity; subsurface current meters measuring bottom currents and temperature; and
36 subsurface temperature recorders. Many of the surface platforms provide near real-time data
37 telemetry to the Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center and subsequent distribution via the
38 World Wide Web. Time series data from subsurface instruments (without telemetry) are
39 typically available every 12 to 24 months, after the instrument has been recovered and the dataset
40 uploaded. Information about available datasets such as geo-location, depth, data format, and
41 other metadata are available for both surface and subsurface instruments at the NOAA Coral
42 Reef Information System (CoRIS) website (National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration,
43 2007b).

1 Another component of CREIOS is Coral Reef Watch (NESDIS, Office of Research and
2 Applications) which uses remote sensing, computational algorithms, and artificial intelligence
3 tools in the near real-time monitoring, modeling, and reporting of physical environmental
4 conditions that adversely influence coral reef ecosystems. Satellite remotely sensed data products
5 include near real-time identification of bleaching “hotspots” and identification of low-wind
6 (doldrums) areas over the world’s oceans. The CRED long-term moored observing stations are
7 part of the Coral Reef Early Warning System (CREWS) network initiated by the NOAA Coral
8 Health and Monitoring Program, which provides access to near real-time meteorological and
9 oceanographic data from major U.S. coral reef areas. The CREWS buoys deployed by CRED in
10 the NWHI record and telemeter data pertaining to sea-surface temperature, salinity, wind speed
11 and direction, air temperature, barometric pressure, UV-B, and photosynthetically available
12 radiation (Kenyon *et al.*, 2006; NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service, 2007).

13
14 Information from CREIOS serves to alert resource managers and researchers to environmental
15 events considered significant to the health of the surrounding coral reef ecosystem, allowing
16 managers to implement response measures in a timely manner, and allowing researchers to
17 increase spatial or temporal sampling resolution, if warranted. Response measures might include
18 focused monitoring to determine the extent and duration of the event and management actions
19 could include limiting access to these areas until recovery is observed. Information from the
20 Coral Reef Watch Program in summer 2002 indicated conditions favorable for bleaching and
21 resulted in assessments focused on potential bleaching areas during the subsequent research
22 cruise.

23
24 **Potential for Altering or Supplementing Current Management Practices to Enable Adaptation to**
25 **Climate Change**

26 To more fully address concerns about the ecological impacts of climate change on coral reef
27 ecosystems and the effect of reef ecosystems on climate change, a number of agencies have
28 proposed a collaborative effort to establish a state-of-the-art ocean observing system to monitor
29 the key parameters of climate change impacting reef ecosystems of the Pacific and Western
30 Atlantic/Caribbean. This proposed system includes:

- 31 • Expanding the existing array of oceanographic platforms across the remainder of the U.S.
32 Pacific Islands
- 33 • Installing pCO₂ and UV-B sensors to examine long-term changes in carbon cycling and UV
34 radiation
- 35 • Establish long-term records of coral reef environmental variability to examine past climate
36 changes using paleoclimatic records of SST and other parameters from coral skeletons.
37 This will allow us to determine if current and future SST stresses are unusual, or part of
38 natural climatic variability.
- 39 • Develop/expand integrated *in situ* and satellite based bleaching mapping system
- 40 • Continue the development of the Coral Reef Early Warning System, which can be used to
41 develop timely research activities to determine the extent and duration of any climate event
42 and management actions that can potentially be implemented to mitigate these events.

43
44 In order to better understanding the impact of sea-level rise on low-lying emergent areas in the
45 NWHI, data are needed on hydrodynamic and geological characteristics of the region. Detailed
46 information on elevation, bathymetry, waves, wind, tide, etc. is needed to develop predictive

1 models of shoreline change relative to climate change. One possible management measure to
2 counter loss of habitat for monk seals and turtles in the NWHI due to sea level rise might be
3 beach nourishment (Baker, Littnan, and Johnston, 2006). Given the small size of the islets in the
4 NWHI, local sand resources might be sufficient to mitigate sea level rise, but a great deal of
5 research and planning would be required given the remoteness and sensitive nature of the
6 ecosystem (Baker, Littnan, and Johnston, 2006).

7 **8.4.3.3 Conclusions**

8 The nearly pristine condition of the NWHI results in one of the last large-scale, intact, predator-
9 dominated reef ecosystems remaining in the world (Friedlander and DeMartini, 2002; Pandolfi *et*
10 *al.*, 2005). Top predators can regulate the structure of the entire community and have the
11 potential to buffer some of the ecological effects of climate change (Sala, 2006). Intact
12 ecosystems such as the NWHI are hypothesized to be more resistant and resilient to stressors,
13 including climate change (West and Salm, 2003). Owing to its irreplaceable assemblage of
14 organisms, it possesses extremely high conservation value. The Papahānaumokuākea Marine
15 National Monument is the largest marine protected area (MPA) in the world and provides a
16 unique opportunity to examine the effects of climate change on a nearly intact large-scale marine
17 ecosystem.

18 **8.4.4 Case Study: the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary**

19 **8.4.4.1 Introduction**

20 **Ecosystem Structure**

21 Designated in 1980, the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary (CINMS) consists of an area
22 of approximately 1,243 nm² of coastal and ocean waters and submerged lands off the southern
23 coast of California (Fig. 8.10). CINMS extends 6 nm offshore from the five northern Channel
24 Islands, including San Miguel, Santa Cruz, Santa Rosa, Anacapa, and Santa Barbara islands. The
25 primary objective of the sanctuary is to conserve, protect, and enhance the biodiversity,
26 ecological integrity, and cultural legacy of marine resources surrounding the Channel Islands for
27 current and future generations. State and federal agencies with overlapping jurisdiction in the
28 CINMS, including the California Department of Fish and Game, the Channel Islands National
29 Park, and the National Marine Fisheries Service, are working together to manage impacts of
30 human activities on marine ecosystems.

31
32
33

34 **Figure 8.10.** Map of the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary showing the location
35 of existing state and proposed federal marine reserves and marine conservation areas
36 (Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary, 2007).

37

38 The Channel Islands are distributed across a biogeographic boundary between cool temperate
39 waters of the Californian Current and warm temperate waters of the Davidson Current (or
40 California Countercurrent). The California Current is characterized by coastal upwelling of cool,
41 nutrient-rich waters that contribute to high biological productivity. Intertidal communities around
42 San Miguel, Santa Rosa, and part of Santa Cruz islands are characteristic of the cool temperate

1 region, whereas those around Catalina, San Clemente, Anacapa, and Santa Barbara islands are
2 associated with the warm temperate region (Murray and Littler, 1981). Fish communities around
3 the Channel Islands also show a distinctive grouping based on association with western islands
4 (influenced strongly by the California Current) and eastern islands (influenced by the Davidson
5 Current). Rockfish (*Sebastes* spp.), embiotocid species, and pile perch occur more in western
6 islands while Island kelpfish (*Alloclinus holderi*), opaleye (*Girella nigricans*), garibaldi
7 (*Hypsypops rubicundus*), blacksmith (*Chromis punctipinnis*), and kelp bass (*Paralabrax*
8 *clathratus*) occur more often in the eastern islands (Halpern and Cottenie, 2007).

9
10 From Monterey Bay to Baja California, including the Channel Islands, giant kelp (*Macrocystis*
11 *pyrifera*) is the dominant habitat-forming alga. Giant kelp grows in dense stands on hard rocky
12 substrate at depths of 2–30 m (Foster and Schiel, 1985). Kelp is among the fastest growing of all
13 algae, adding an average of 27 cm/day (in spring) and a maximum of 61 cm/day and reaching
14 lengths of 60 m (200 ft). Giant kelp forests support a diverse community of associated species
15 including marine invertebrates, fishes, marine mammals and seabirds (Graham, 2004). Kelp
16 stocks and fronds may support thousands of invertebrates including amphipods, decapods,
17 polychaetes, and ophiuroids. Some invertebrates such as sea urchins (*Strongylocentrotus* spp.)
18 and abalone (*Haliotis* spp.) rely on bits of drifting kelp as their primary source of food. Fish in
19 the kelp forest community specialize in life at different depths: kelp, black and yellow, and
20 gopher rockfish are found at the base of kelp stocks, while olive, yellowtail, and black rockfish
21 swim in mid-water. Drifting kelp mats at the sea surface provide cover for young fishes that are
22 vulnerable to predation. Marine mammals and seabirds are attracted to abundant fish and
23 invertebrate populations (which serve as their primary prey) associated with kelp forests.
24 Because of their high diversity, California kelp forests are thought to be more resistant and
25 resilient to disturbance than kelp forests elsewhere (Steneck *et al.*, 2002).

26 27 **Stressors on Marine Ecosystems in the Channel Islands**

28 Kelp forest communities are vulnerable to an array of stressors caused by human activities and
29 natural environmental variation. Using data gathered by the Channel Islands National Park over a
30 period of 20 years, Halpern and Cottenie (2007) documented overall declines in abundance of
31 giant kelp communities over time. These declines were linked with commercial and recreational
32 fishing in the Channel Islands. Fishing reduces density and average individual size of targeted
33 populations and, consequently, targeted species are more vulnerable to the effects of natural
34 environmental variation. Fishing also has cascading effects through the marine food web. In
35 areas of the Channel Islands where lobster (*Panulirus interruptus*) and other top predators were
36 fished, purple sea urchin (*Strongylocentrotus purpuratus*) populations were more abundant,
37 overgrazing stands of giant kelp and other algae and resulting in barren reefs devoid of kelp and
38 its associated species (Behrens and Lafferty, 2004).

39
40 Kelp forest communities also respond to natural environmental variations, such as increased
41 storm activity, ocean warming, and shifts in winds associated with ENSO events (Dayton *et al.*,
42 1992; Ladah, Zertuche-Gonzalez, and Hernandez-Carmona, 1999; Edwards, 2004). Storm
43 activity, which is known to increase during periods of ocean warming, damages kelp stocks and
44 rips kelp holdfasts from their rocky substrate (Dayton *et al.*, 1992; 1999). In addition to the
45 physical damage from storms, kelp growth may be suppressed by lower levels of nutrients due to
46 relaxation of coastal wind activity and reduction of upwelling during ENSO events. Giant kelp

1 forests were decimated during the intense ENSO event of 1982–83 and did not recover to their
2 previous extent for almost two decades. Several other ENSO events, in 1992–93 and 1997–98
3 also diminished kelp growth. The effects of these ENSO events may have been compounded by a
4 shift (Pacific Decadal Oscillation) in 1977 to a period of slightly warmer waters in the
5 northeastern Pacific Ocean.

6
7 Dramatic declines of giant kelp communities are likely the consequence of cumulative impacts
8 of human activities and natural environmental variation. Giant kelp forests in one marine reserve
9 (where fishing has been prohibited since 1978) were more resilient to ocean warming, shifts in
10 winds, and increased storm activity associated with ENSO (Behrens and Lafferty, 2004). Giant
11 kelp forests in the reserve persisted over a period of 20 years, including several intense ENSO
12 events. Kelp forests at all study sites outside of the reserve were overgrazed by dense populations
13 of sea urchins, and their growth was further inhibited by warmer water, increased storm activity,
14 and lower levels of nutrients, leading to periodic die-backs to a barren reef state. These
15 observations suggest that marine reserves can be used as a management tool to increase
16 resilience of kelp forest communities.

17 **Current Management of the Channel Islands**

18 In 1999, the CINMS and the California Department of Fish and Game (CDFG) developed a
19 partnership and public process (modeled after the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary) to
20 consider the use of fully protected marine reserves to protect natural biological communities
21 (Box 8.7). The cooperating agencies engaged a working group of stakeholders through the
22 Sanctuary Advisory Council to evaluate the problem and develop potential solutions. The
23 “Marine Reserves Working Group” developed a problem statement acknowledging that human
24 activities and natural ecological changes contributed to the decline of marine communities in
25 southern California. The working group determined that marine reserves should be established to
26 protect marine habitats and species, to achieve sustainable fisheries and maintain long-term
27 socioeconomic viability, and to protect cultural heritage. The stakeholders, working with marine
28 scientists and economists, created a range of options for marine reserves to meet these goals.
29 Subsequently, the CINMS and CDFG used the two most widely supported options to craft
30 compromise solution that addressed the interests of a broad array of stakeholders.

31
32
33 In 2003, the CDFG established a network of 10 fully protected marine reserves and two
34 conservation areas that allow limited commercial and recreational fishing (Fig. 8.10). The total
35 area protected was 102 nm², approximately 10% of sanctuary waters. The marine reserves and
36 conservation areas included a variety of representative marine habitats characteristic of the
37 region, such as rocky intertidal habitats, sandy beaches, kelp forests, seagrass beds, soft bottom
38 habitats, submerged rocky substrate, and submarine canyons. In 2006, the Pacific Fisheries
39 Management Council designated Essential Fish Habitat to protect benthic communities from
40 bottom contact fishing gear within and adjacent to the state marine protected areas, up to 6 nm
41 offshore. In the same year, the CINMS released a Draft Environmental Impact Statement
42 proposing complementary marine reserves and a marine conservation area extending into federal
43 waters (Fig. 8.10). The Essential Fish Habitat designated by the Council and the marine
44 protected areas proposed by the sanctuary increase the total area of protected marine zones to
45 19% of the CINMS.

1 In 2008, data from relevant monitoring programs will be prepared for a review by the California
2 Fish and Game Commission of the first five years of monitoring the Channel Islands state marine
3 reserves. Expectations are that species that were targeted by commercial or recreational fisheries
4 will increase in density and size within marine reserves (Halpern, 2003). Some species are
5 expected to decline if their predators or competitors increase in abundance.

6
7 **Potential Effects of Climate Change on Ecosystems in the Channel Islands region**

8 Coastal SST has increased steadily (by approximately 2°C) since 1950 and is expected to
9 increase further in the coming centuries (IPCC, 2007b). Water temperature affects metabolism
10 and growth (Bayne, Thompson, and Widdows, 1973; Phillips, 2005), feeding behavior (Petraitis,
11 1992; Sanford, 1999; 2002), reproduction (Hutchins, 1947; Philippart *et al.*, 2003), and rates of
12 larval development (Hoegh-Guldberg and Pearse, 1995; Anil, Desai, and Khandeparker, 2001;
13 Luppi, Spivak, and Bas, 2003; O'Connor *et al.*, 2007) of intertidal and subtidal animals. Shifts in
14 species ranges already have occurred in California with the steady increase of coastal sea surface
15 temperature. The range boundary of *Kelletia kelletii* has shifted north from the late 1970s to the
16 2000s (Herrlinger, 1981; Zacherl, Gaines, and Lonhart, 2003). Southern species of anthozoans,
17 barnacles, and gastropods increased in Monterey Bay, while northern species of anthozoans and
18 limpets decreased between the 1930s (Hewatt, 1937) and the 1990s (Barry *et al.*, 1995; Sagarin
19 *et al.*, 1999). Holbrook, Schmitt, and Stephens, Jr. (1997) documented an increase of 150% in
20 southern species of kelp forest fish in southern California, and a decrease of 50% in northern
21 species since the 1970s.

22
23 Increased ocean temperatures have been linked with outbreaks of marine disease (Hofmann *et*
24 *al.*, 1999). Populations of black abalone (*Haliotis cracherodii*) in the Channel Islands and north
25 along the California coast to Cambria suffered mass mortalities from “withering syndrome”
26 caused by the intracellular prokaryote *Xenohaliotis californiensis*, between 1986 and 2001.
27 Healthy populations of black abalone persist north of Cambria, where cool waters suppress the
28 disease. Samples of red abalone (*Haliotis rufescens*) from populations around San Miguel Island
29 in 2006 indicated that approximately 58% of the population carries *X. californiensis*, but the red
30 abalone population persists in a thermal refuge within which temperatures are low enough to
31 suppress the expression of the disease. The disease may be expressed during prolonged periods
32 of warming (*e.g.*, over 18°C for several days) associated with ENSO or other warm-water events.
33 In 1992, an ENSO year, an urchin-specific bacterial disease entered the Channel Islands region
34 and spread through dense populations of purple sea urchin (*Strongylocentrotus purpuratus*). Sites
35 located in a marine reserve where fishing was prohibited had more lobster (which prey on
36 urchins), smaller populations of urchins, persistent forests of giant kelp, and a near absence of
37 the disease (Lafferty and Kushner, 2000). During several warm-water events, including the
38 ENSO of 1997–98, scientists observed and documented declines of sea star populations at the
39 Channel Islands due to epidemics of “wasting disease,” which disintegrates the animals.

40
41 Increased temperature is expected to lead to numerous changes in currents and upwelling
42 activity. As the sea surface warms, thermal stratification will intensify and become more stable,
43 leading to reduced upwelling of cool, nutrient-rich water (Soto, 2001; Field *et al.*, 2001).
44 Reduced upwelling will lead to a decline in primary productivity (McGowan *et al.*, 1998),
45 suppression of kelp growth, and cascading effects through the marine food web.

1 Introductions of non-native species (such as the European green crab *Carcinus maenas* on the
2 U.S. West Coast) are associated with rising temperatures and altered currents associated with
3 ENSO events (Yamada *et al.*, 2005). The Sanctuary Advisory Council identified non-indigenous
4 species as an emerging issue in the revised Sanctuary Management Plan (U.S. Department of
5 Commerce, 2006). The sanctuary participated in the removal of a non-indigenous alga (*Undaria*
6 *pinnatifida*) from the Santa Barbara Harbor, but the sanctuary does not support systematic
7 monitoring or removal of non-indigenous species. Introduction of non-indigenous species can
8 disrupt native communities, potentially leading to shifts in community structure.

9
10 Sea level may rise up to three feet in the next 100 years, depending on the concentrations of
11 greenhouse gases during this period (Cayan *et al.*, 2006; IPCC, 2007b). Projections of sea level
12 rise around the Channel Islands indicate little encroachment of seawater onto land due to steep
13 rocky cliffs that form the margins of the islands; however, projections of sea level rise indicate
14 potential saltwater intrusion into low-lying coastal areas such as the Santa Barbara Harbor
15 (where the CINMS Headquarters is located) and the Channel Islands Harbor (where the
16 sanctuary's southern office is located). Changes in sea level may affect the type of coastal
17 ecosystem (Hoffman, 2003). Graham, Dayton, and Erlandson (2003) suggested that sea level rise
18 transformed the Southern California Bight from a productive rocky coast to a less productive
19 sandy coast more than 18,000 years ago.

20
21 The severity of storm events is likely to increase with climate change (Houghton *et al.*, 2001). As
22 described above, storm activity damages kelp stocks and pulls kelp holdfasts from the substrate
23 (Dayton *et al.*, 1992; 1999). Frequent and intense storm activity during the 1982–83 ENSO event
24 decimated populations of giant kelp that once formed extensive beds attached to massive old
25 kelp holdfasts in sandy areas along the mainland coast. Since the old kelp holdfasts were
26 displaced from the mainland coast, young kelp plants have been unable to attach to the sandy
27 substrate and the coastal kelp forests have not returned. At the Channel Islands, kelp forests that
28 were destroyed during the same ENSO event have slowly returned to the rocky reefs around the
29 Channel Islands, particularly following a Pacific Decadal Oscillation to cooler waters in 1998.

30 31 **A Shared Vision for the Channel Islands**

32 The CINMS manager and staff work closely with the Sanctuary Advisory Council to identify and
33 resolve resource management issues. As noted above, the Sanctuary Advisory Council consists
34 of representatives from local, state, and federal agencies, which share jurisdiction of resources
35 within the Channel Islands region, and stakeholders with interests in those resources. The
36 Sanctuary Advisory Council offers a unique opportunity to focus attention of regional agencies
37 and stakeholders on the potential threats associated with climate change and to develop a shared
38 vision for how to respond.

39
40 The Sanctuary Management Plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 2006) describes a strategy to
41 work in a coordinated, complementary, and comprehensive manner with other authorities that
42 share similar or overlapping mandates, jurisdiction, objectives, and/or interests. The sanctuary is
43 poised to take a leading role to bring together the relevant agencies and stakeholders to discuss
44 the issue of climate change. The sanctuary can initiate an effort to develop regional plans to
45 adapt to a modified landscape and seascape predicted from climate change models, and mitigate
46 the negative impacts of climate change.

1 **8.4.4.2 Management of the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary**

2 The Sanctuary Management Plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 2006) for the CINMS
3 mentions but does not fully address the issue of climate change, with one exception in the
4 strategy for offshore water quality monitoring. The strategy is to better evaluate and understand
5 impacts on water quality from oceanographic and climatic changes and human activities. The
6 proposed actions include continued vessel and staff support for monitoring projects related to
7 water quality. To evaluate the potential impacts of climate change, the sanctuary staff could
8 expand monitoring of—or collaborate with researchers who are monitoring—ocean water
9 temperature, currents, dissolved oxygen, and pH at different depths.

10
11 The Sanctuary Management Plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 2006) describes a strategy to
12 identify, assess, and respond to emerging issues. The plan explicitly identifies noise pollution,
13 non-indigenous species, and marine mammal strikes as emerging issues. Other emerging issues
14 that are not addressed by the management plan, but should be, include ocean warming, sea level
15 rise, shifts in ocean circulation, ocean acidification, spread of disease, and shifts in species
16 ranges.

17
18 The Sanctuary Management Plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 2006) outlined a potential
19 response to emerging issues through consultation with the Sanctuary Advisory Council and local,
20 state, or federal agencies with a leading or shared authority for addressing the issue. With the
21 elevated level of certainty associated with climate change projections (IPCC, 2007b), it is
22 appropriate to bring the topic of climate change to the Sanctuary Advisory Council and begin
23 working with local, state, and federal agencies that share authority in the region to plan for
24 potential impacts of climate change. Regional agency managers may consider and develop
25 strategies to respond to the potential impacts of:

- 26
27 • Ocean warming (contributing to potential shifts in species ranges, changes in metabolic and
28 physiological processes, and accelerated spread of disease);
29 • Ocean acidification (leading to breakdown of calcareous accretions in corals and shells);
30 • Shifts in ocean circulation (leading to changes in upwelling activity and possible formation
31 of low oxygen zones); and
32 • Sea level rise (shifting jurisdictional boundaries, displacing terrestrial and intertidal
33 organisms, leading to salt-water inundation of coastal marshes, lagoons and estuaries, and
34 increasing coastal flood events).

35
36 **Monitoring and Research in the Channel Islands Region**

37 Monitoring and research are critical for detecting and understanding the effects of climate and
38 ocean change. The Sanctuary Management Plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 2006) outlines
39 strategies for monitoring and research in the coming years, but the plan does not address climate
40 and ocean change specifically. The current strategies for monitoring and research can be
41 refocused slightly to capture important information about climate and ocean change.

42
43 Monitoring of algae, invertebrates, and fishes is needed within and around marine reserves to
44 detect differences between protected and targeted populations in their responses to climate
45 change. One hypothesis is that populations within marine reserves will be more resilient to the

1 effects of climate change than those that are altered by fishing and other extractive uses. In
2 addition, scientists have determined that local environmental variation causes different
3 populations to respond in different ways to ocean warming (e.g., Helmuth *et al.*, 2006). For
4 example, a population of red abalone at San Miguel Island lives in a “thermal refuge” where
5 waters are cooled by upwelling, preventing spread of disease that is carried in the population.
6 Sustained ocean warming is likely to increase thermal stress of individuals in this population and
7 accelerate the spread of disease through affected populations. Monitoring can be used to detect
8 such changes at individual, population, and regional levels. The CINMS has the capacity to
9 support subtidal monitoring activities from the *RV Shearwater*, aerial surveys of kelp canopy
10 from the sanctuary aircraft, and collaborative research projects with scientists and fishermen.
11

12 In addition to the ecological monitoring in marine reserves, it will be critical to monitor
13 environmental variables, including ocean water temperature, sea level, currents, dissolved
14 oxygen, and pH at different depths. Any change in these variables should trigger more intensive
15 monitoring to evaluate the ecological impacts of ocean warming, sea level rise, shifts in current
16 patterns, low oxygen, and increased acidification. The sanctuary could benefit from partnerships
17 with scientists who are monitoring ocean changes and who have the capability of ramping up
18 research activities in response to observed changes. For example, before 2002, scientists at
19 Oregon State University, Corvallis, routinely monitored temperature and salinity at stationary
20 moorings off the coast of Oregon. When they detected low oxygen during routine monitoring in
21 2002, the scientists intensified their monitoring efforts by increasing the number of temperature
22 and salinity sensors and adding oxygen sensors (which transmit data on a daily basis) near the
23 seafloor at a number of locations along the coast. In this way, the scientists can quantify the
24 scope and duration of hypoxic events, which have recurred off the coast of Oregon during the
25 past five years (Barth *et al.*, 2007).
26

27 The Sanctuary Management Plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 2006) describes the need for
28 analysis and evaluation of information from sanctuary monitoring and research. Working with
29 local educational institutions and the National Center for Ecological Analysis and Synthesis, the
30 sanctuary could develop the capacity to catalog and analyze spatial data (maps) that characterize
31 the coastline of the sanctuary and the extent of kelp canopy within the sanctuary, among other
32 types of information. To detect the ecological impacts of climate change, the information from
33 sanctuary monitoring and research should be reviewed at regular intervals (at least annually) by
34 collaborating scientists (such as the Sanctuary Advisory Council’s Research Activities Panel),
35 sanctuary staff, and the sanctuary manager. The annual review should compare data from the
36 current year with previous years, from areas inside marine reserves and in surrounding, fished
37 areas. Ecological changes should be placed within the context of El Niño-Southern Oscillation
38 and La Niña cycles and shifts associated with the Pacific Decadal Oscillation. Changes in
39 fisheries or other management regulations also should be considered as part of the evaluation.
40 Any significant shifts away from predictable trends should trigger further evaluation of the data
41 in an effort to understand local and regional ecosystem dynamics and any possible links to
42 climate change.
43

44 **Communication in the Channel Islands Region**

45 Public awareness and understanding are paramount in the discussion about how to adapt to
46 climate change. The education and outreach strategies described in the Sanctuary Management

1 Plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 2006) do not focus on the issue of climate change but, with
2 a slight shift in focus, the existing strategies can be used to increase public awareness and
3 understanding of the causes and impacts of climate change on ocean ecosystems. Key strategies
4 are to educate teachers, students, volunteers, and the public using an array of tools, including
5 workshops, public lectures, the sanctuary website and weather kiosks, and a sanctuary
6 publication and brochure, among others. Opportunities to focus the sanctuary education
7 program's activities and products on the issue of climate change include the following:
8

- 9 • Integrate information about climate change into volunteer Sanctuary Naturalist Corps and
10 adult education programs;
- 11 • Update the sanctuary website and weather kiosks with information about causes and impacts
12 of climate change;
- 13 • Produce a special issue of the sanctuary publication, *Alolkoy*, about the current scientific
14 understanding of climate change and potential impacts on sanctuary resources;
- 15 • Develop a brochure about climate change to help members of the community identify
16 opportunities to reduce their contributions to greenhouse gases and other stressors that
17 exacerbate the problem of climate change;
- 18 • Expand the sanctuary's Ocean Etiquette program (National Marine Sanctuary Program,
19 2007d) to include consideration and mitigation of individual activities that contribute to
20 climate change;
- 21 • Host a teacher workshop on the subject of climate change;
- 22 • Prepare web-based curriculum with classroom exercises and opportunities for experiential
23 learning about climate change; and
- 24 • Partner with local scientists who study climate change to give public lectures and engage
25 students in monitoring climate change.

26 **8.4.5 Conclusions About Case Studies**

27 The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park has been examined along with the National Marine
28 Sanctuary case studies because it is an example of an MPA that has a relatively highly developed
29 climate change program in place. A Coral Bleaching Response Plan is part of its Climate Change
30 Response Program, which is linked to a Representative Areas Program and a Water Quality
31 Protection Plan in a comprehensive approach to support the resilience of the coral reef
32 ecosystem. In contrast, the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary is only now developing a
33 bleaching response plan. The Florida Reef Resilience Program, under the leadership of The
34 Nature Conservancy, is implementing a quantitative assessment of coral reefs before and after
35 bleaching events. The recently established Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian
36 Islands) Marine National Monument is the largest MPA in the world and provides a unique
37 opportunity to examine the effects of climate change on a nearly intact large-scale marine
38 ecosystem. These three MPAs consist of coral reef ecosystems, which have experienced coral
39 bleaching events over the past two decades.
40

41 The Sanctuary Management Plan for the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary mentions,
42 but does not fully address, the issue of climate change. The Plan describes a strategy to identify,
43 assess, and respond to emerging issues through consultation with the Sanctuary Advisory
44 Council and local, state, or federal agencies. Emerging issues that are not yet addressed by the

1 management plan include ocean warming, sea level rise, shifts in ocean circulation, ocean
2 acidification, spread of disease, and shifts in species ranges.

3
4 Barriers to implementation of adaptation options in MPAs include lack of resources, varying
5 degrees of interest in and concern about climate change impacts, and a need for basic research on
6 marine ecosystems and climate change impacts. National Marine Sanctuary Program staff are
7 hard-pressed to maintain existing management programs, which do not yet include explicit focus
8 on effects of climate change. While the Program’s strategic plan does not address climate
9 change, the Program has recently formed a Climate Change Working Group that will be
10 developing recommendations. Although there is considerable research on physical impacts of
11 climate change in marine systems, research on biological effects and ecological consequences is
12 not as well developed.

13
14 Opportunities with regard to implementation of adaptation options in MPAs include a growing
15 public concern about the marine environment, recommendations of two ocean commissions, and
16 an increasing dedication of marine scientists to conduct research that is relevant to MPA
17 management. References to climate change as well as MPAs permeate both the Pew Oceans
18 Commission and U.S. Commission on Ocean Policy reports on the state of the oceans. Both
19 commissions held extensive public meetings, and their findings reflect changing public
20 perceptions and attitudes about protecting marine resources from threats of climate change. The
21 interests of the marine science community have also evolved, with a shift from “basic” to
22 “applied” research over recent decades. Attitudes of MPA managers have changed as well, with
23 a growing recognition of the need to better understand ecological processes in order to
24 implement science-based adaptive management.

25 **8.5 Conclusions**

26 Adaptive management of MPAs in the context of climate change includes the concept that intact
27 marine ecosystems are more resistant and resilient to change than are degraded systems (Harley
28 *et al.*, 2006). Marine reserves develop fully functional communities when populations of heavily
29 fished species recover and less-altered abundance patterns and size structures accrue.
30 Implementing networks of MPAs, including large areas of the ocean, will help “spread the risk”
31 posed by climate change by protecting multiple replicates of the full range of habitats and
32 communities within ecosystems (Soto, 2001; Palumbi, 2003; Halpern, 2003; Halpern and
33 Warner, 2003; Roberts *et al.*, 2003b; Palumbi, 2004; Kaufman *et al.*, 2004; Salm, Done, and
34 McLeod, 2006).

35
36 The most effective configuration of MPAs would be a network of highly protected areas nested
37 within a broader management framework (Botsford, 2005; Hilborn, Micheli, and De Leo, 2006;
38 Almany *et al.*, 2007). As part of this configuration, areas that are ecologically and physically
39 significant and connected by currents should be identified and included as a way of enhancing
40 resilience in the context of climate change. Critical areas to consider include nursery grounds,
41 spawning grounds, areas of high species diversity, areas that contain a variety of habitat types in
42 close proximity, and potential climate refugia. At the site level, managers can build resilience to
43 climate change by protecting marine habitats from direct anthropogenic threats such as pollution,

1 sedimentation, destructive fishing and overfishing. The healthier the marine habitat, the greater
2 the potential will be for resistance to—and recovery from—climate-related disturbances.

3
4 In designing networks, managers should consider information on areas that may represent
5 potential refugia from climate change impacts as well as information on connectivity (current
6 patterns that support larval replenishment and recovery) among sites that vary in their
7 sensitivities to climate change. Protection of seascapes creates areas sufficiently large to resist
8 basic changes to the entire ecosystem (Kaufman *et al.*, 2004). Large reserves may benefit
9 individual species by enabling them to spend entire adult phases of their life cycle without being
10 captured and killed, with concomitant increases in reproductive output (Sobel and Dahlgren,
11 2004) and quality (Berkeley, Chapman, and Sogard, 2004).

12
13 A key issue for MPA managers concerns achieving the goals and objectives of a local-scale
14 management plan in the context of larger-scale stressors from atmospheric, terrestrial, and
15 marine sources (Jameson, Tupper, and Ridley, 2002). Another issue concerns maintaining a
16 focus on immediate, devastating effects of overexploitation, coastal pollution, and nonindigenous
17 species as climate change impacts increase in magnitude or frequency over time (Paine, 1993).
18 Within sites, managers can increase resilience to climate change by managing other
19 anthropogenic stressors that also degrade ecosystems, such as fishing and overexploitation;
20 inputs of nutrients, sediments, and pollutants; and habitat damage and destruction. Efforts by
21 MPA managers to enhance resilience and resistance of marine communities may at least “buy
22 some time” against threats of climate change by slowing the rate of decline caused by other,
23 more manageable stressors (Hansen, Biringer, and Hoffman, 2003; Hoffman, 2003; Marshall and
24 Schuttenberg, 2006b).

25
26 Resilience is also affected by trophic linkages, which are key characteristics maintaining
27 ecosystem integrity. An approach that has been identified to maintain resilience is the
28 management of functional groups, specifically herbivores. In one instance on the Great Barrier
29 Reef, recovery from an algae-dominated to a coral-dominated state was driven by a single batfish
30 species rather than grazing by dominant parrotfishes or surgeonfishes that normally keep algae in
31 check on reefs (Bellwood, Hughes, and Hoey, 2006). This finding highlights the need to protect
32 the full range of species to maintain resilience and the need for further research on key species
33 and ecological processes.

34
35 The challenges of climate change require creative solutions and collaboration among a variety of
36 stakeholders to generate the necessary finances and support to respond to climate change stress.
37 Global, regional, and local partnerships across a range of sectors such as agriculture, tourism,
38 water resource management, conservation, and infrastructure development can help alleviate the
39 financial burdens of responding to climate change in MPAs. Finally, effective implementation of
40 the above strategies in support of ecological resilience will only be possible in the presence of
41 human social resilience.

1 **8.6 References**

- 2 **Access Economics** and A.V. Vecchia, 2007: *Measuring the Economic and Financial Value of*
3 *the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park 2005/06*. Access Economics Pty Limited for Great
4 Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority, Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority.
- 5 **Adger, W.N.**, 2000: Social and ecological resilience: are they related? *Progress in Human*
6 *Geography*, **24(3)**, 347-364.
- 7 **Adger, W.N.**, T.P. Hughes, C. Folke, S.R. Carpenter, and J. Rockstroem, 2005: Social-
8 ecological resilience to coastal disasters. *Science*, **309(5737)**, 1036-1039.
- 9 **Aeby, G.S.**, J.C. Kenyon, J.E. Maragos, and D.C. Potts, 2003: First record of mass coral
10 bleaching in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Coral Reefs*, **22**, 256-256.
- 11 **Aeby, G.S.**, 2006: Baseline levels of coral disease in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Atoll*
12 *Research Bulletin*, **543**, 471-488.
- 13 **Agardy, T.**, P. Bridgewater, M.P. Crosby, J. Day, P.K. Dayton, R. Kenchington, D. Laffoley, P.
14 McConney, P.A. Murray, J.E. Parks, and L. Peau, 2003: Dangerous targets? Unresolved
15 issues and ideological clashes around marine protected areas. *Aquatic Conservation:*
16 *Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems*, **13(4)**, 353-367.
- 17 **Agardy, T.S.**, 1997: *Marine Protected Areas and Ocean Conservation*. R.G. Landes Company
18 and Academic Press, Austin, TX, pp. 1-244.
- 19 **Airamé, S.**, J.E. Dugan, K.D. Lafferty, H. Leslie, D.A. McArdle, and R.R. Warner, 2003:
20 Applying ecological criteria to marine reserve design: a case study from the California
21 Channel Islands. *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S170-S184.
- 22 **Albritton, D.L.** and M. Filho, 2001: Technical summary, In: *Climate Change 2001: the*
23 *Scientific Basis*, [Houghton, J.T., Y. Ding, D.J. Griggs, M. Noguer, P.J. van der Linden,
24 X. Dai, K. Maskell, and C.A. Johnson (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- 25 **Allen, G.R.**, 2002: Indo-Pacific coral-reef fishes as indicators of conservation hotspots. In:
26 *Proceedings of the Ninth International Coral Reef Symposium 23*, October 2000, pp.
27 921-926.
- 28 **Allison, G.W.**, S.D. Gaines, J. Lubchenco, and H.P. Possingham, 2003: Ensuring persistence of
29 marine reserves: catastrophes require adopting an insurance factor. *Ecological*
30 *Applications*, **13(1)**, S8-S24.

- 1 **Allison**, G.W., J. Lubchenco, and M.H. Carr, 1998: Marine reserves are necessary but not
2 sufficient for marine conservation. *Ecological Applications*, **8 Supplement - Ecosystem**
3 **Management for Sustainable Marine Fisheries(1)**, S79-S92.
- 4 **Almany**, G.R., M.L. Berumen, S.R. Therrold, S. Planes, and G.P. Jones, 2007: Local
5 replenishment of coral reef fish populations in a marine reserve. *Science*, **316(5825)**, 742-
6 744.
- 7 **Andrew**, N.L., Y. Agatsuma, E. Ballesteros, A.G. Bazhin, E.P. Creaser, D.K.A. Barnes, L.W.
8 Botsford, A. Bradbury, A. Campbell, and J.D. Dixon, 2002: Status and management of
9 world sea urchin fisheries. *Oceanography and Marine Biology: an Annual review*, **40**,
10 343-425.
- 11 **Anil**, A.C., D. Desai, and L. Khandeparker, 2001: Larval development and metamorphosis in
12 *Balanus amphitrite* Darwin (Cirripedia; Thoracica): significance of food concentration,
13 temperature and nucleic acids. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology*,
14 **263(2)**, 125-141.
- 15 **Antonelis**, G.A., J.D. Baker, T.C. Johanos, R.C. Braun, and A.L. Harting, 2006: Hawaiian monk
16 seal: status and conservation issues. *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **543**, 75-101.
- 17 **Aronson**, R.B. and W.F. Precht, 2006: Conservation, precaution, and Caribbean reefs. *Coral*
18 *Reefs*, **25**, 441-450.
- 19 **Ault**, J.S., J.A. Bohnsack, and G.A. Meester, 1998: A retrospective (1979-1996) multispecies
20 assessment of coral reef fish stocks in the Florida Keys. *Fishery Bulletin*, **96(3)**, 395-414.
- 21 **Ault**, J.S., S.G. Smith, J.A. Bohnsack, J. Luo, D.E. Harper, and D.B. McClellan, 2006: Building
22 sustainable fisheries in Florida's coral reef ecosystem: positive signs in the Dry Tortugas.
23 *Bulletin of Marine Science*, **78(3)**, 633-654.
- 24 **Baker**, J.D., C.L. Littnan, and D.W. Johnston, 2006: Potential effects of sea level rise on the
25 terrestrial habitats of endangered and endemic megafauna in the Northwestern Hawaiian
26 Islands. *Endangered Species Research*, **4**, 1-10.
- 27 **Bakun**, A., 1990: Global climate change and intensification of coastal ocean upwelling. *Science*,
28 **247**, 198-201.
- 29 **Balazs**, G.H. and M. Chaloupka, 2006: Recovery trend over 32 years at the Hawaiian green
30 turtle rookery of French Frigate Shoals. *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **543**, 147-158.
- 31 **Baldwin**, A., M. Egnotovitch, M. Ford, and W. Platt, 2001: Regeneration in fringe mangrove
32 forests damaged by Hurricane Andrew. *Plant Ecology*, **157(2)**, 151-164.

- 1 **Ballantine, B.**, 1997: Design principles for systems of no-take marine reserves. Proceedings of
2 the the design and monitoring of marine reserves, Fisheries Center, University of British
3 Columbia, Vancouver.
- 4 **Baltz, D.M. and P.B. Moyle**, 1993: Invasion resistance to introduced species by a native
5 assemblage of California stream fishes. *Ecological Applications*, **3**, 246-255.
- 6 **Barnett, T.P., D.W. Pierce, and R. Schnur**, 2001: Detection of anthropogenic climate change in
7 the world's oceans. *Science*, **292**, 270-274.
- 8 **Barr, B.W.**, 2004: A seamless network of ocean parks and marine sanctuaries: The National
9 Park Service/National Marine Sanctuary partnership. *The George Wright Forum*, **21**, 42-
10 48.
- 11 **Barry, J.P., C.H. Baxter, R.D. Sagarin, and S.E. Gilman**, 1995: Climate-related, long-term
12 faunal changes in a California rocky intertidal community. *Science*, **267(5198)**, 672-675.
- 13 **Barth, J.A., B.A. Menge, J. Lubchenco, F. Chan, J.M. Bane, A.R. Kirincich, M.A. McManus,**
14 **K.J. Nielsen, S.D. Pierce, and L. Washburn**, 2007: Delayed upwelling alters nearshore
15 coastal ocean ecosystems in the northern California current. *Proceedings of the National*
16 *Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **104(10)**, 3719-3724.
- 17 **Bayne, B.L., R. J. Thompson, and J. Widdows**, 1973: Some effects of temperature and food on
18 the rate of oxygen consumption by *Mytilus edulus*, In: *Effects of Temperature on*
19 *Ectothermic Organisms*, [Weiser, W. (ed.)]. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 181-193.
- 20 **Beger, M., G.P. Jones, and P.L. Munday**, 2003: Conservation of coral reef biodiversity: a
21 comparison of reserve selection procedures for corals and fishes. *Biological*
22 *Conservation*, **111(1)**, 53-62.
- 23 **Behrens, M.D. and K.D. Lafferty**, 2004: Effects of marine reserves and urchin disease on
24 southern Californian rocky reef communities. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **279**, 129-
25 139.
- 26 **Bell, R.E., M. Studinger, C.A. Shuman, M.A. Fahnestock, and I. Joughin**, 2007: Large subglacial
27 lakes in East Antarctica at the onset of fast-flowing ice streams. *Nature*, **445**, 904-907.
- 28 **Bellwood, D.R. and T.P. Hughes**, 2001: Regional-scale assembly rules and biodiversity of coral
29 reefs. *Science*, **292(5521)**, 1532-1534.
- 30 **Bellwood, D.R., T.P. Hughes, C. Folke, and M. Nystroem**, 2004: Confronting the coral reef
31 crisis. *Nature*, **429(6994)**, 827-833.

- 1 **Bellwood**, D.R., T.P. Hughes, and A.S. Hoey, 2006: Sleeping functional group drives coral-reef
2 recovery. *Current Biology*, **16(24)**, 2434-2439.
- 3 **Berkeley**, S.A., C. Chapman, and S.M. Sogard, 2004: Maternal age as a determinant of larval
4 growth and survival in a marine fish, *Sebastes melanops*. *Ecology*, **85(5)**, 1258-1264.
- 5 **Berkelmans**, R. and M.J.H. van Oppen, 2006: The role of zooxanthellae in the thermal tolerance
6 of corals: a "nugget of hope" for coral reefs in an era of climate change. *Proceedings of*
7 *the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, **273(1599)**, 2305-2312.
- 8 **Bertness**, M.D., S.D. Gaines, and M.E. Hay, 2001: *Marine Community Ecology*. Sinauer
9 Associates, Sunderland, MA, pp. 1-550.
- 10 **Bindoff**, N.L., J. Willebrand, V. Artale, A. Cazenave, J. Gregory, S. Gulev, K. Hanawa, C. Le
11 Quere, S. Levitus, Y. Nojiri, C. K. Shum, L. D. Talley, and A. Unnikrishnan, 2007:
12 Observations: Oceanic Climate Change and Sea Level, In: *Climate Change 2007: the*
13 *Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment*
14 *Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Solomon, S., D. Quin, M.
15 Manning, Z. Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor, and H.L. Miller (eds.)].
16 Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA, pp.
17 385-432.
- 18 **Black**, K., P. Moran, D. Burrage, and G. De'ath, 1995: Association of low-frequency currents
19 and crown-of-thorns starfish outbreaks. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **125(1)**, 185-
20 194.
- 21 **Black**, K.P., P.J. Moran, and L.S. Hammond, 1991: Numerical models show coral reefs can be
22 self-seeding. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **69**, 55-65.
- 23 **Boessenkool**, K.P., I.R. Hall, H. Elderfield, and I. Yashayaev, 2007: North Atlantic climate and
24 deep-ocean flow speed changes during the last 230 years. *Geophysical Research Letters*,
25 **34(L13614)**, 1-6.
- 26 **Bohnsack**, J.A., B. Causey, M.P. Crosby, R.B. Griffis, M.A. Hixon, T.F. Hourigan, K.H. Koltes,
27 J.E. Maragos, A. Simons, and J.T. Tilmant, 2002: A rationale for minimum 20-30% no-
28 take protection. In: *Proceedings of the Ninth International Coral Reef Symposium 23*,
29 October 2000, pp. 615-619.
- 30 **Bohnsack**, J.A., D.E. Harper, and D.B. McClellan, 1994: Fisheries trends from Monroe County,
31 Florida. *Bulletin of Marine Science*, **54(3)**, 982-1018.

- 1 **Boland, R., B. Zgliczynski, J. Asher, A. Hall, K. Hogrefe, and M. Timmers, 2006: Dynamics of**
2 **debris densities and removal at the northwestern Hawaiian Islands coral reefs. *Atoll***
3 ***Research Bulletin*, **543**, 461-470.**
- 4 **Botsford, L.W., 2005: Potential contributions of marine reserves to sustainable fisheries: recent**
5 **modeling results. *Bulletin of Marine Science*, **76(2)**, 245-260.**
- 6 **Botsford, L.W., F. Micheli, and A. Hastings, 2003: Principles for the design of marine reserves.**
7 ***Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S25-S31.**
- 8 **Boyer, J.N. and H.O. Briceño, 2006: *FY2005 Annual Report of the Water Quality Monitoring***
9 ***Project for the Water Quality Protection Program of the Florida Keys National Marine***
10 ***Sanctuary*. Southeast Environmental Research Center, Florida International University,**
11 **Miami, FL, pp.1-83.**
- 12 **Boyett, H.V., D.G. Bourne, and B.L. Willis, 2007: Elevated temperature and light enhance**
13 **progression and spread of black band disease on staghorn corals of the Great Barrier.**
14 ***Marine Biology*, **151(5)**.**
- 15 **Breitbart, D.L. and G. F. Riedel, 2005: Multiple stressors in marine systems, In: *Marine***
16 ***Conservation Biology: the Science of Maintaining the Sea's Biodiversity*, [Norse, E. and**
17 **L.B. Crowder (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 167-182.**
- 18 **Buddemeier, R.W., J.A. Kleypas, and R. Aronson, 2004: *Coral Reefs and Global Climate***
19 ***Change: Potential Contributions of Climate Change to Stresses on Coral Reef***
20 ***Ecosystems*. Pew Center on Global Climate Change.**
- 21 **Burns, T.P., 1985: Hard-coral distribution and cold-water disturbances in South Florida:**
22 **variation with depth and location. *Coral Reefs*, **4**, 117-124.**
- 23 **Burton, G.A., Jr. and R. Pitt, 2001: *Stormwater Effects Handbook: a Toolbox for Watershed***
24 ***Mangers, Scientists and Engineers*. Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, FL, pp.1-911.**
- 25 **Cabanes, C., A. Cazenave, and C. Le Provost, 2001: Sea level rise during past 40 years**
26 **determined from satellite and in situ observations. *Science*, **294(5543)**, 840-842.**
- 27 **Caldeira, K. and M.E. Wickett, 2003: Anthropogenic carbon and ocean pH. *Nature*, **425(6956)**,**
28 **365-365.**
- 29 **Caldeira, K. and M.E. Wickett, 2005: Ocean model predictions of chemistry changes from**
30 **carbon dioxide emissions to the atmosphere and ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*,**
31 ****110(C09S04)**.**

- 1 **California Department of Fish and Game**, 2007a: *California Marine Life Protection Act: Master Plan for MPAs*. California Department of Fish and Game.
- 2
- 3 **California Department of Fish and Game**, 2007b: Marine life protection act initiatives. California Department of Fish and Game Website,
4 <http://www.dfg.ca.gov/mrd/mlpa/defs.html#mma>, accessed on 7-27-2007b.
- 5
- 6 **Carlton, J.T.**, 1996: Biological invasions and cryptogenic species. *Ecology*, **77(6)**, 1653-1655.
- 7 **Carlton, J.T.**, 2000: Global change and biological invasions in the oceans, In: *Invasive Species in a Changing World*, [Mooney, H.A. and R.J. Hobbs (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 31-53.
- 8
- 9
- 10 **Carpenter, S.R.**, N.F. Caraco, D.L. Correll, R.W. Howarth, A.N. Sharpley, and V.H. Smith, 1998: Nonpoint pollution of surface waters with phosphorus and nitrogen. *Ecological Applications*, **8(3)**, 559-568.
- 11
- 12
- 13 **Carr, M.H.**, J.E. Neigel, J.A. Estes, S. Andelman, R.R. Warner, and J.L. Largier, 2003: Comparing marine and terrestrial ecosystems: Implications for the design of coastal marine reserves. *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S90-S107.
- 14
- 15
- 16 **Causey, B.D.**, 2001: Lessons learned from the intensification of coral bleaching from 1980-2000 in the Florida Keys, USA. In: *Proceedings of the Workshop on Mitigating Coral Bleaching Impact Through MPA Design* [Salm, R.V. and S.L. Coles (eds.)]. Proceedings of the Coral Bleaching and Marine Protected Areas, pp. 60-66.
- 17
- 18
- 19
- 20 **Cayan, D.**, P. Bromirski, K. Hayhoe, M. Tyree, M. Dettinger, and R. Flick, 2006: *Projecting Future Sea Level*. CEC-500-2005-202-SF, White paper prepared for the California Climate Change Center.
- 21
- 22
- 23 **Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary**, 2007: Marine reserves environmental review process. NOAA Website, NOAA, <http://channelislands.noaa.gov/marineres/main.html>, accessed on 7-1-2007.
- 24
- 25
- 26 **Chen, J.L.**, C.R. Wilson, and B.D. Tapley, 2006: Satellite gravity measurements confirm accelerated melting of Greenland ice sheet. *Science*, **313**, 1958-1960.
- 27
- 28 **Chin, A.**, P. M. Kyne, T. I. Walker, R. B. McAuley, J. D. Stevens, C. L. Dudgeon, and R. D. Pillans, 2007: Vulnerability of chondrichthyan fishes of the Great Barrier Reef to climate change, In: *Climate Change and the Great Barrier Reef*, [Johnson, J. and P. Marshall (eds.)]. Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority, Townsville.
- 29
- 30
- 31

- 1 **Cho, L.**, 2005: Marine protected areas: a tool for integrated coastal management in Belize.
2 *Ocean & Coastal Management*, **48(11)**, 932-947.
- 3 **Christie, P.**, 2004: Marine protected areas as biological successes and social failures in
4 Southeast Asia. *American Fisheries Society Symposium*, **42**, 155-164.
- 5 **Cinner, J., M.J. Marnane, T.R. McClanahan, and G.R. Almany**, 2005: Periodic closures as
6 adaptive coral reef management in the Indo-Pacific. *Ecology and Society*, **11(1)**, 31.
- 7 **Coe, J.M. and D. Rogers**, 1997: *Marine Debris: Sources, Impacts, and Solutions*. Springer-
8 Verlag, New York, NY, pp. 1-432.
- 9 **Coles, S.L. and Y.H. Fadlallah**, 1991: Reef coral survival and mortality at low temperatures in
10 the Arabian Gulf: new species-specific lower temperature limits. *Coral Reefs*, **9(4)**, 231-
11 237.
- 12 **Commonwealth of Australia**, 1999: Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation
13 Act.
- 14 **Condrey, R. and D. Fuller**, 1992: The US Gulf shrimp fishery, In: *Climate Variability, Climate*
15 *Change, and Fisheries*, [Glantz, M.F. (ed.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge,
16 UK, pp. 89-119.
- 17 **Congdon, B.C., C. A. Erwin, D. R. Peck, G. B. Baker, M. C. Double, and P. O'Neill**, 2007:
18 Vulnerability of seabirds on the Great Barrier Reef to climate change, In: *Climate*
19 *Change and the Great Barrier Reef*, [Johnson, J. and P. Marshall (eds.)]. Great Barrier
20 Reef Marine Park Authority, Townsville.
- 21 **Corrigan, C.**, 2006: *The Marine Learning Partnership: Effective Design and Management of*
22 *Tropical Marine Protected Area Networks Through Cross-Institutional Learning*. Year
23 End Report, The Nature Conservancy.
- 24 **Costanza, R., R. d'Arge, R. de Groot, S. Farber, M. Grasso, B. Hannon, K. Limburg, S. Naeem,**
25 **R.V. O'Neill, J. Paruelo, R.G. Raskin, P. Sutton, and M. van den Belt**, 1997: The value of
26 the world's ecosystem services and natural capital. *Nature*, **387(6630)**, 253-260.
- 27 **Cowen, R.K., C.B. Paris, D.B. Olson, and J.L. Fortuna**, 2003: The role of long distance dispersal
28 versus local retention in replenishing marine populations. *Gulf and Caribbean Research*
29 *Supplement*, **14**, 129-137.
- 30 **Cowen, R.K., C.B. Paris, and A. Srinivasan**, 2006: Scaling of connectivity in marine
31 populations. *Science*, **311(5760)**, 522-527.

- 1 **Cowie-Haskell**, B.D. and J.M. Delaney, 2003: Integrating science into the design of the
2 Tortugas Ecological Reserve. *Marine Technology Society Journal*, **37(1)**, 68-79.
- 3 **Crossett**, K.M., T.J. Culliton, P.C. Wiley, and T.R. Goodspeed, 2004: *Population Trends Along*
4 *the Coastal United States: 1980-2008*. National Oceanographic and Atmospheric
5 Administration, Washington, DC, pp.1-54.
- 6 **Crowder**, L.B., S.J. Lyman, W.F. Figueira, and J. Priddy, 2000: Source-sink population
7 dynamics and the problem of siting marine reserves. *Bulletin of Marine Science*, **66(3)**,
8 799-820.
- 9 **Curry**, R., B. Dickson, and I. Yashayaev, 2003: A change in the freshwater balance in the
10 Atlantic Ocean over the past four decades. *Nature*, **426**, 826-829.
- 11 **Curry**, R. and C. Mauritzen, 2005: Dilution of the northern atlantic current in recent decades.
12 *Science*, **308(5729)**, 1772-1774.
- 13 **Dameron**, O.J., M. Parke, M.A. Albins, and R. Brainard, 2007: Marine debris accumulation in
14 the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands: an examination of rates and processes. *Marine*
15 *Pollution Bulletin*, **54(4)**, 423-433.
- 16 **Davis**, G.E., 1982: A century of natural change in coral distribution at the Dry Tortugas: a
17 comparison of reef maps from 1881 and 1976. *Bulletin of Marine Science*, **32(2)**, 608-
18 623.
- 19 **Davis**, G.E., 2004: Maintaining unimpaired ocean resources and experiences: a National Park
20 Service ocean stewardship strategy. *The George Wright Forum*, **21**, 22-41.
- 21 **Davis**, G.E., L.L. Loope, C.T. Roman, G. Smith, and J.T. Tilmant, 1994: *Assessment of*
22 *Hurricane Andrew Impacts on Natural and Archeological Resources of Big Cypress*
23 *National Preserve, Biscayne National Park, and Everglades National Park*. National
24 Park Service, pp.1-158.
- 25 **Day**, J., L. Fernandes, A. Lewis, G. De'ath, S. Slegers, B. Barnett, B. Kerrigan, D. Breen, J.
26 Innes, J. Oliver, T. Ward, and D. Lowe, 2002: The representative areas program for
27 protecting biodiversity in the Great Barrier Reef World Heritage Area. In: *Proceedings of*
28 *the Ninth International Coral Reef Symposium 23*, October 2000, pp. 687-696.
- 29 **Day**, J., L. Fernandes, A. Lewis, and J. Innes, 2004: Representative areas program - an
30 ecosystem approach to biodiversity protection planning. In: *Proceedings of the Second*
31 *International Tropical Ecosystems Management Symposium* March 2003.

- 1 **Dayton, P.K., M.J. Tegner, P.B. Edwards, and K.L. Riser, 1999:** Temporal and spatial scales of
2 kelp demography: the role of oceanographic climate. *Ecological Monographs*, **69(2)**,
3 219-250.
- 4 **Dayton, P.K., M.J. Tegner, P.E. Parnell, and P.B. Edwards, 1992:** Temporal and spatial patterns
5 of disturbance and recovery in a kelp forest community. *Ecological Monographs*, **62(3)**,
6 421-445.
- 7 **Dayton, P.K., S. Thrush, and F.C. Coleman, 2002:** *Ecological Effects of Fishing in Marine*
8 *Ecosystems of the United States*. Pew Oceans Commission, Arlington, VA, pp. 1-45.
- 9 **Delaney, J.M., 2003:** Community capacity building in the designation of the Tortugas Ecological
10 Reserve. *Gulf and Caribbean Research*, **12(2)**, 163-169.
- 11 **DeMartini, E.E. and A.M. Friedlander, 2004:** Spatial patterns of endemism in shallow-water
12 reef fish populations of the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Marine Ecology Progress*
13 *Series*, **271**, 281-296.
- 14 **DeMartini, E.E. and A.M. Friedlander, 2006:** Predation, endemism, and related processes
15 structuring shallow-water reef fish assemblages of the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands.
16 *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **543**, 237-256.
- 17 **DeMartini, E.E., A.M. Friedlander, and S.R. Holzwarth, 2005:** Size at sex change in
18 protogynous labroids, prey body size distributions, and apex predator densities at NW
19 Hawaiian atolls. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **297**, 259-271.
- 20 **Denny, M.W., 1988:** *Biology and the Mechanics of the Wave-Swept Environment*. Princeton
21 University Press, Princeton, NJ, pp. 1-218.
- 22 **Dickson, B., I. Yashayaev, J. Meincke, B. Turrell, S. Dye, and J. Holfort, 2002:** Rapid
23 freshening of the deep North Atlantic Ocean over the past four decades. *Nature*, **(416)**,
24 832-837.
- 25 **Dollar, S.J. and R.W. Grigg, 2004:** Anthropogenic and natural stresses on selected coral reefs in
26 Hawaii: a multidecade synthesis of impact and recovery. *Pacific Science*, **58(2)**, 281-304.
- 27 **Done, T. and R. Jones, 2006:** Tropical coastal ecosystems and climate change prediction: global
28 and local risks, In: *Coral Reefs and Climate Change: Science and Management*,
29 [Phinney, J.T., O. Hoegh-Guldberg, J. Kleypas, W. Skirving, and A. Strong (eds.)].
30 American Geophysical Union, Washington, DC.
- 31 **Done, T., 2001:** Scientific principles for establishing MPAs to alleviate coral bleaching and
32 promote recovery. In: *Proceedings of the Workshop on Mitigating Coral Bleaching*

- 1 *Impact Through MPA Design* [Salm, R.V. and S.L. Coles (eds.)]. Proceedings of the
2 Coral Bleaching and Marine Protected Areas, pp. 60-66.
- 3 **Done**, T., P. Whetton, R. Jones, R. Berkelmans, J. Lough, W. Skirving, and S. Wooldridge,
4 2003: *Global Climate Change and Coral Bleaching on the Great Barrier Reef*. State of
5 Queensland Greenhouse Taskforce through the Department of Natural Resources and
6 Mines.
- 7 **Done**, T.J., 1999: Coral community adaptability to environmental change at the scales of regions,
8 reefs and reef zones. *American Zoologist*, **39(1)**, 66-79.
- 9 **Done**, T.J. and R.E. Reichelt, 1998: Integrated coastal zone and fisheries ecosystem
10 management: generic goals and performance indices. *Ecological Applications*, **8(1)**,
11 S110-S118.
- 12 **Donner**, S.D., T.R. Knutson, and M. Oppenheimer, 2007: Model-based assessment of the role of
13 human-induced climate change in the 2005 Caribbean coral bleaching event. *Proceedings*
14 *of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **104(13)**, 5483-
15 5488.
- 16 **Donner**, S.D., W.J. Skirving, C.M. Little, M. Oppenheimer, and O. Hoegh-Guldberg, 2005:
17 Global assessment of coral bleaching and required rates of adaptation under climate
18 change. *Global Change Biology*, **11(12)**, 2251.
- 19 **Douglas**, A.E., 2003: Coral bleaching--how and why? *Marine Pollution Bulletin*, **46(4)**, 385-392.
- 20 **Dulvy**, N.K., Y. Sadovy, and J.D. Reynolds, 2003: Extinction vulnerability in marine
21 populations. *Fish and Fisheries*, **4(1)**, 25-64.
- 22 **Edge**, S.E., M.B. Morgan, D.F. Gleason, and T.W. Snell, 2005: Development of a coral cDNA
23 array to examine gene expression profiles in *Montastraea faveolata* exposed to
24 environmental stress. *Marine Pollution Bulletin*, **51**, 507-523.
- 25 **Edwards**, M.S., 2004: Estimating scale-dependency in disturbance impacts: El Niños and giant
26 kelp forests in the northeast Pacific. *Oecologia*, **138(3)**, 436-447.
- 27 **Eng**, C.T., J.N. Paw, and F.Y. Guarin, 1989: Environmental impact of aquaculture and the
28 effects of pollution on coastal aquaculture development in southeast Asia. *Marine*
29 *Pollution Bulletin*, **20(7)**, 335-343.
- 30 **Engel**, J. and R. Kvitek, 1998: Effects of otter trawling on a benthic Community in Monterey
31 Bay National Marine Sanctuary. *Conservation Biology*, **12(6)**, 1204-1214.

- 1 **Engie**, K. and T. Klinger, 2007: Modeling passive dispersal through a large estuarine system to
2 evaluate marine reserve network connections. *Estuaries and coasts*, **30(2)**, 201-213.
- 3 **Estes**, J.A., 2005: Carnivory and trophic connectivity in kelp forests, In: *Large Carnivores and*
4 *the Conservation of Biodiversity*, [Ray, J.C., K.H. Redford, R.S. Steneck, and J. Berger
- 5 (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 61-81.
- 6 **Fabricius**, K.E. and G. De'ath, 2004: Identifying ecological change and its causes: a case study
7 on coral reefs. *Ecological Applications*, **14(5)**, 1448-1465.
- 8 **Feely**, R.A., C.L. Sabine, K. Lee, W. Berelson, J. Kleypas, V.J. Fabry, and F.J. Millero, 2004:
9 Impact of anthropogenic CO₂ on the CaCO₃ system in the oceans. *Science*, **305(5682)**,
10 362-366.
- 11 **Fernandes**, L., J. Day, A. Lewis, S. Slegers, B. Kerrigan, D. Breen, D. Cameron, B. Jago, J.
12 Hall, D. Lowe, J. Tanzer, V. Chadwick, L. Thompson, K. Gorman, M. Simmons, B.
13 Barnett, K. Sampson, G. De'ath, B. Mapstone, H. Marsh, H. Possingham, I. Ball, T.
14 Ward, K. Dobbs, J. Aumend, D. Slater, and K. Stapleton, 2005: Establishing
15 representative no-take areas in the Great Barrier Reef: large-scale implementation of
16 theory on Marine Protected Areas. *Conservation Biology*, **19(6)**, 1733-1744.
- 17 **Field**, J.C., D. F. Boesch, D. Scavia, R. H. Buddemeier, V. R. Burkett, D. Cayan, M. Fogerty, M.
18 A. Harwell, R. W. Howarth, C. Mason, L. J. Pietrafesa, D. J. Reed, T. C. Royer, A. H.
19 Sallenger, M. Spranger, and J. G. Titus, 2001: Potential consequences of climate
20 variability and change on coastal and marine resources, In: *Climate Change Impacts in*
21 *the United States: Potential Consequences of Climate Change and Variability and*
22 *Change. Foundation Document.*, U.S. Global Change Research Program, Cambridge,
23 UK, Cambridge University Press.
- 24 **Fields**, P.A., J.B. Graham, R.H. Rosenblatt, and G.N. Somero, 1993: Effects of expected global
25 climate change on marine faunas. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **8**, 361-367.
- 26 **Firing**, J. and R.E. Brainard, 2006: Ten years of shipboard ADCP measurements along the
27 Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **543**, 351-368.
- 28 **Fish and Wildlife Research Institute**, 2007: Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary water
29 quality protection program. Fish and Wildlife Research Institute Website,
30 http://ocean.floridamarine.org/fknms_wqpp/, accessed on 7-27-0007.
- 31 **Fitt**, W.K., B.E. Brown, M.E. Warner, and R.P. Dunne, 2001: Coral bleaching: interpretation of
32 thermal tolerance limits and thermal thresholds in tropical corals. *Coral Reefs*, **20(1)**, 51-
33 65.

- 1 **Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary**, 2002: *Comprehensive Science Plan*.
- 2 **Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary**, 2003: Florida Keys NMS team OCEAN. Florida
3 Keys National Marine Sanctuary Webpage, <http://floridakeys.noaa.gov/edu/ocean.html>,
4 accessed on 5-21-2007.
- 5 **Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary**, 2007: Year 2000 Florida Keys National Marine
6 Sanctuary advisory panel meeting. NOAA Website,
7 http://floridakeys.noaa.gov/research_monitoring/sap2000.html, accessed on 7-27-2007.
- 8 **Fosså**, J.H., P.B. Mortensen, and D.M. Furevik, 2002: The deep-water coral *Lophelia pertusa* in
9 Norwegian waters: distribution and fishery impacts. *Hydrobiologia*, **471**, 1-12.
- 10 **Foster**, M.S. and D.R. Schiel, 1985: *The Ecology of Giant Kelp Forests in California: a*
11 *Community Profile*. Biological Report 85(7.2), U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Slidell,
12 LA, pp.1-153.
- 13 **Frank**, K.T., B. Petrie, J.S. Choi, and W.C. Leggett, 2005: Trophic cascades in a formerly cod-
14 dominated ecosystem. *Science*, **308(5728)**, 1621-1623.
- 15 **Friedlander**, A., G. S. Aeby, R. S. Brainard, A. Clark, E. DeMartini, S. Godwin, J. Kenyon, R.
16 Kosaki, J. Maragos, and P. Vroom, 2005: The state of coral reef ecosystems of the
17 northwestern Hawaiian islands, In: *The State of Coral Reef Ecosystems of the United*
18 *States and Pacific Freely Associated States: 2005*, [Wadell, J.E. (ed.)]. NOAA/NCCOS
19 Center for Coastal Monitoring and Assessment's Biogeography Team, Silver Spring, MD,
20 pp. 270-311.
- 21 **Friedlander**, A., J.S. Nowlis, J.A. Sanchez, R. Appeldoorn, P. Usseglio, C. McCormick, S.
22 Bejarano, and A. Mitchell-Chui, 2003: Designing effective Marine Protected Areas in
23 Seaflower biosphere reserve, Colombia, based on biological and sociological
24 information. *Conservation Biology*, **17(6)**, 1769-1784.
- 25 **Friedlander**, A.M. and E.E. DeMartini, 2002: Contrasts in density, size, and biomass of reef
26 fishes between the northwestern and the main Hawaiian islands: the effects of fishing
27 down apex predators. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **230**, 253-264.
- 28 **Galbraith**, H., R. Jones, R. Park, J. Clough, S. Herrod-Julius, B. Harrington, and G. Page, 2002:
29 Global climate change and sea level rise: potential losses of intertidal habitat for
30 shorebirds. *Waterbirds*, **25(2)**, 173-183.
- 31 **Gardner**, T.A., I.M. Cote, J.A. Gill, A. Grant, and A.R. Watkinson, 2003: Long-term region-
32 wide declines in Caribbean corals. *Science*, **301(5635)**, 958-960.

- 1 **Gardner**, T.A., I.M. Cote, J.A. Gill, A. Grant, and A.R. Watkinson, 2005: Hurricanes and
2 Caribbean coral reefs: impacts, recovery patterns, and role in long-term decline. *Ecology*,
3 **86(1)**, 174-184.
- 4 **Gattuso**, J.P., M. Frankignoulle, and R. Wollast, 1998: Carbon and carbonate metabolism in
5 coastal aquatic ecosystems. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*, **29**, 405-434.
- 6 **Gerber**, L.R. and S.S. Heppell, 2004: The use of demographic sensitivity analysis in marine
7 species conservation planning. *Biological Conservation*, **120(1)**, 121-128.
- 8 **Gleason**, D.F., P.J. Edmunds, and R.D. Gates, 2006: Ultraviolet radiation effects on the behavior
9 and recruitment of larvae from the reef coral *Porites astreoides*. *Marine Biology*, **148(3)**,
10 503-512.
- 11 **Glenn**, R.P. and T.L. Pugh, 2006: Epizootic shell disease in American lobster (*Homarus*
12 *americanus*) in Massachusetts coastal waters: interactions of temperature, maturity, and
13 intermolt duration. *Journal of Crustacean Biology*, **26(4)**, 639-645.
- 14 **Glynn**, P.W., 1991: Coral reef bleaching in the 1980s and possible connections with global
15 warming. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution*, **6(6)**, 175-179.
- 16 **Glynn**, P.W., 1993: Coral reef bleaching: ecological perspectives. *Coral Reefs*, **12(1)**, 1-17.
- 17 **Goldberg**, J. and C. Wilkinson, 2004: Global threats to coral reefs: coral bleaching, global
18 climate change, disease, predator plagues, and invasive species, In: *Status of Coral Reefs*
19 *of the World: 2004*, [Wilkinson, C. (ed.)]. Australian Institute of Marine Science,
20 Townsville, Queensland, pp. 67-92.
- 21 **Graham**, M.H., 2004: Effects of local deforestation on the diversity and structure of southern
22 California giant kelp forest food webs. *Ecosystems*, **7(4)**, 341-357.
- 23 **Graham**, M.H., P.K. Dayton, and J.M. Erlandson, 2003: Ice ages and ecological transitions on
24 temperate coasts. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution*, **18(1)**, 33-40.
- 25 **Graham**, N.A.J., R.D. Evans, and G.R. Russ, 2003: The effects of marine reserve protection on
26 the trophic relationships of reef fishes on the Great Barrier Reef. *Environmental*
27 *Conservation*, **30(2)**, 200-208.
- 28 **Granek**, E.F. and M.A. Brown, 2005: Co-management approach to marine conservation in
29 Moheli, Comoros Islands. *Conservation Biology*, **19(6)**, 1724-1732.

- 1 **Greene, C.H.** and A.J. Pershing, 2007: Climate drives sea change. *Science*, **315(5815)**, 1084-
2 1085.
- 3 **Grigg, R.W.**, 1981: Acropora in Hawaii. Part 2: zoogeography. *Pacific Science*, **35**, 15-24.
- 4 **Grigg, R.W.**, 1982: Darwin Point: A threshold for atoll formation. *Coral Reefs*, **1(1)**, 29-34.
- 5 **Grigg, R.W.**, 1988: Paleoceanography of coral reefs in the Hawaiian-Emperor chain. *Science*,
6 **240(4860)**, 1737-1743.
- 7 **Grigg, R.W.**, 1998: Holocene coral reef accretion in Hawaii: a function of wave exposure and
8 sea level history. *Coral Reefs*, **17(3)**, 263-272.
- 9 **Grigg, R.W.**, S.J. Dollar, A. Huppert, B.D. Causey, K. Andrews, W.L. Kruczynski, W.F. Precht,
10 S.L. Miller, R.B. Aronson, and J.F. Bruno, 2005: Reassessing U.S. coral reefs. *Science*,
11 **308(5729)**, 1740-1742.
- 12 **Grigg, R.W.**, J. Polovina, A. Friedlander, and S. Rohman, 2007: Biology and paleoceanography
13 of the coral reefs in the northwestern Hawaiian Islands, In: *Coral Reefs of the United*
14 *States*, [Riegl, B. and R. Dodge (eds.)]. Springer-Vergal Publishing.
- 15 **Grigg, R.W.**, J. Wells, and C. Wallace, 1981: Acropora in Hawaii, Part 1: history of the
16 scientific record, systematics and ecology. *Pacific Science*, **35**, 1-13.
- 17 **Griggs, R.W.**, 2006: The history of marine research in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands:
18 lessons from the past and hopes for the future. *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **543**, 13-22.
- 19 **Grober-Dunsmore, R.**, L. Wooninck, and C. Wahle, In Press: Vertical zoning in marine
20 protected areas: ecological considerations for balancing pelagic fishing with conservation
21 of benthic communities. *Fisheries*.
- 22 **Gucinski, H.**, R.T. Lackey, and B.C. Spence, 1990: Global climate change: policy implications
23 for fisheries. *Fisheries*, **15(6)**, 33-38.
- 24 **Gunderson, L.H.**, 2000: Resilience in theory and practice. *Annual Review of Ecology and*
25 *Systematics*, **31**, 425-439.
- 26 **Guzmán, H.M.** and J. Cortés, 2001: Changes in reef community structure after fifteen years of
27 natural disturbances in the eastern pacific (Costa Rica). *Bulletin of Marine Science*, **69(1)**,
28 133-149.

- 1 **Halpern, B.S.**, 2003: The impact of marine reserves: do reserves work and does reserve size
2 matter? *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S117-S137.
- 3 **Halpern, B.S.** and K. Cottenie, 2007: Little evidence for climate effects on local-scale structure
4 and dynamics of California kelp forest communities. *Global Change Biology*, **13(1)**, 236-
5 251.
- 6 **Halpern, B.S.**, H.M. Regan, H.P. Possingham, and M.A. McCarthy, 2006: Accounting for
7 uncertainty in marine reserve design. *Ecological Letters*, **9(1)**, 2-11.
- 8 **Halpern, B.S.** and R.R. Warner, 2003: Matching marine reserve design to reserve objectives.
9 *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London, Series B: Biological Sciences*, **270(1527)**,
10 1871-1878.
- 11 **Hansen, L.**, J.L. Biringer, and J.R. Hoffman, 2003: *Buying Time: a User's Manual for Building*
12 *Resistance and Resilience to Climate Change in Natural Systems*. World Wildlife
13 Foundation, Washington, DC, pp. 1-244.
- 14 **Hare, J.A.** and P.E. Whitfield, 2003: *An Integrated Assessment of the Introduction of Lionfish*
15 *(Pterois Volitans/Miles Complex) to the Western Atlantic Ocean*. NOAA Technical
16 Memorandum NOS NCCOS 2, pp.1-21.
- 17 **Harley, C.D.G.**, R. Hughes, K.M. Hultgren, B.G. Miner, C.J.B. Sorte, C.S. Thornber, L.F.
18 Rodriguez, L. Tomanek, and S.L. Williams, 2006: The impacts of climate change in
19 coastal marine systems. *Ecology Letters*, **9(2)**, 228-241.
- 20 **Harvell, C.D.**, K. Kim, J.M. Burkholder, R.R. Colwell, P.R. Epstein, D.J. Grimes, E.E.
21 Hofmann, E.K. Lipp, A. Osterhaus, and R.M. Overstreet, 1999: Emerging marine
22 diseases--climate links and anthropogenic factors. *Science*, **285**, 1505-1510.
- 23 **Harvell, C.D.**, C.E. Mitchell, J.R. Ward, S. Altizer, A.P. Dobson, R.S. Ostfeld, and M.D.
24 Samuel, 2002: Climate warming and disease risks for terrestrial and marine biota.
25 *Science*, **296(5576)**, 2158-2162.
- 26 **Harvell, D.**, K. Kim, C. Quirolo, J. Weir, and G. Smith, 2001: Coral bleaching and disease:
27 contributors to 1998 mass mortality in *Briareum asbestinum* (*Octocorallia, Gorgonacea*).
28 *Hydrobiologia*, **460(1)**, 97-104.
- 29 **Hastings, A.** and L.W. Botsford, 2003: Comparing designs of marine reserves for fisheries and
30 for biodiversity. *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S65-S70.

- 1 **Hatcher**, B.G. and A.W.D. Larkum, 1983: An experimental analysis of factors controlling the
2 standing crop of the epilithic algal community on a coral reef. *Journal of Experimental*
3 *Marine Biology and Ecology*, **69(1)**, 61-84.
- 4 **Haynes**, D., 2001: *Great Barrier Reef Water Quality: Current Issues*. Great Barrier Reef Marine
5 Park Authority, Townsville, Australia.
- 6 **Helmuth**, B., 2002: How do we measure the environment? Linking intertidal thermal physiology
7 and ecology through biophysics. *Integrative and Comparative Biology*, **42(4)**, 837-845.
- 8 **Helmuth**, B., B.R. Broitman, C.A. Blanchette, S. Gilman, P. Halpin, C.D.G. Harley, M.J.
9 O'Donnell, G.E. Hofmann, B. Menge, and D. Strickland, 2006: Mosaic patterns of
10 thermal stress in the rocky intertidal zone: implications for climate change. *Ecological*
11 *Monographs*, **76(4)**, 461-479.
- 12 **Herrlinger**, T.J., 1981: *Range Extension of Kelletia Kelletii*. Veliger, pp. 1-78.
- 13 **Hewatt**, W.G., 1937: Ecological studies on selected marine intertidal communities of Monterey
14 Bay, California. *American Midland Naturalist*, **18(2)**, 161-206.
- 15 **Hiddink**, J.G., S. Jennings, and M.J. Kaiser, 2006: Indicators of the ecological impact of bottom-
16 trawl disturbance on seabed communities. *Ecosystems*, **9(7)**, 1190-1199.
- 17 **Hilborn**, R., F. Micheli, and G.A. De Leo, 2006: Integrating marine protected areas with catch
18 regulation. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*, **63(3)**, 642-649.
- 19 **Hinrichsen**, D., B. Robey, and U.D. Upadhyay, 1998: *Solutions for a Water-Short World*.
20 Population Report, Series M, No. 14, Population Information Program, Center for
21 Communication Programs, the Johns Hopkins University School of Public Health,
22 Baltimore, MD, pp.1-60.
- 23 **Hixon**, M.A. and B.N. Tissot, 2007: Comparison of trawled vs untrawled mud seafloor
24 assemblages of fishes and macroinvertebrates at Coquille Bank, Oregon. *Journal of*
25 *Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology*, **344**, 23-24.
- 26 **Hockey**, P.A.R. and G.M. Branch, 1994: Conserving marine biodiversity on the African coast:
27 Implications of a terrestrial perspective. *Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater*
28 *Ecosystems*, **4(4)**, 345-362.
- 29 **Hoegh-Guldberg**, O., 1999: Climate change, coral bleaching and the future of the world's coral
30 reefs. *Marine & Freshwater Research*, **50(8)**, 839-866.

- 1 **Hoegh-Guldberg, O.**, 2004: Coral reefs and projections of future change, In: *Coral Health and*
2 *Disease*, [Rosenberg, E. and Y. Loya (eds.)]. Springer, Berlin, Germany, pp. 463-484.
- 3 **Hoegh-Guldberg, O.**, K. Anthony, R. Berkelmans, S. Dove, K. Fabricius, J. Lough, P. A.
4 Marshall, M. J. H. van Oppen, A. Negri, and B. Willis, 2007: Vulnerability of reef-
5 building corals on the Great Barrier Reef to Climate Change, In: *Climate Change and the*
6 *Great Barrier Reef*, [Johnson, J.E. and P.A. Marshall (eds.)]. Great Barrier Reef Marine
7 Park Authority & Australian Greenhouse Office.
- 8 **Hoegh-Guldberg, O.** and J.S. Pearse, 1995: Temperature, food availability, and the development
9 of marine invertebrate larvae. *American Zoologist*, **35(4)**, 415-425.
- 10 **Hoeke, R.**, R. Brainard, R. Moffitt, and M. Merrifield, 2006: The role of oceanographic
11 conditions and reef morphology in the 2002 coral bleaching event in the Northwestern
12 Hawaiian Islands. *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **543**, 489-503.
- 13 **Hoffman, J.**, 2003: Designing reserves to sustain temperate marine ecosystems in the face of
14 global climate change, In: *Buying Time: a User's Manual for Building Resistance and*
15 *Resilience to Climate Change in Natural Systems*, [Hansen, L.J., J.L. Biringer, and J.R.
16 Hoffman (eds.)]. WWF Climate Change Program, Washington, DC, pp. 123-155.
- 17 **Hofmann, E.E.**, J.M. Klinck, S.E. Ford, and E.N. Powell, 1999: Disease dynamics: modeling of
18 the effect of climate change on oyster disease. *National Shellfisheries Association*, **19(1)**,
19 329.
- 20 **Holbrook, S.J.**, R.J. Schmitt, and J.S. Stephens, Jr., 1997: Changes in an assemblage of
21 temperate reef fishes associated with a climate shift. *Ecological Applications*, **7(4)**, 1299-
22 1310.
- 23 **Holling, C.S.**, 1995: What barriers? What bridges?, In: *Barriers and Bridges to the Renewal of*
24 *Ecosystems and Institutions*, [Gunderson, L.H., C.S. Holling, and S.S. Light (eds.)].
25 Columbia University Press, New York, NY, pp. 3-34.
- 26 **Houghton, J.T.**, Y. Ding, D.J. Griggs, M. Noguera, P.J. van der Linden, X. Dai, K. Maskell, and
27 C.A. Johnson, 2001: *Climate Change 2001: the Scientific Basis*. Cambridge University
28 Press, Cambridge.
- 29 **Hughes, T.P.**, A.H. Baird, D.R. Bellwood, M. Card, S.R. Connolly, C. Folke, R. Grosberg, O.
30 Hoegh-Guldberg, J.B.C. Jackson, J. Kleypas, J.M. Lough, P. Marshall, M. Nystrom, S.R.
31 Palumbi, J.M. Pandolfi, B. Rosen, and J. Roughgarden, 2003: Climate change, human
32 impacts, and the resilience of coral reefs. *Science*, **301(5635)**, 929-933.

- 1 **Hughes**, T.P., D.R. Bellwood, C. Folke, R.S. Steneck, and J. Wilson, 2005: New paradigms for
2 supporting the resilience of marine ecosystems. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution*, **20(7)**,
3 380-386.
- 4 **Husebø**, Å., L. Nøttestad, J.H. Fosså, D.M. Furevik, and S.B. Jørgensen, 2002: Distribution and
5 abundance of fish in deep-sea coral habitats. *Hydrobiologia*, **471(1)**, 91-99.
- 6 **Hutchins**, L.W., 1947: The bases for temperature zonation in geographical distribution.
7 *Ecological Monographs*, **17(3)**, 325-335.
- 8 **Hyrenbach**, K.D., K.A. Forney, and P.K. Dayton, 2000: Marine protected areas and ocean basin
9 management. *Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems*, **10(6)**, 437-
10 458.
- 11 **IPCC**, 2007a: *Climate Change 2007: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability. Summary for*
12 *Policymakers. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fourth Assessment Report of the*
13 *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. IPCC Secretariat, Geneva, pp.1-23.
- 14 **IPCC**, 2007b: *Climate Change 2007: the Physical Science Basis. Summary for Policymakers.*
15 *Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the*
16 *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. IPCC Secretariat, Geneva, pp.1-21.
- 17 **Iwama**, G.K., 1991: Interactions between aquaculture and the environment. *Critical Reviews in*
18 *Environmental Control*, **21(2)**, 177-216.
- 19 **Jaap**, W.C., 1979: Observation on zooxanthellae expulsion at Middle Sambo Reef, Florida Keys.
20 *Bulletin of Marine Science*, **29**, 414-422.
- 21 **Jaap**, W.C., 1984: *The Ecology of the South Florida Coral Reefs: a Community Profile*. FWS
22 OBS-82/08 and MMS 84-0038, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Metairie, LA, pp.1-152.
- 23 **Jaap**, W.C. and P. Hallock, 1990: Coral reefs, In: *Ecosystems of Florida*, [Meyers, R.L. and J.J.
24 Ewel (eds.)]. University of Central Florida Press, Orlando, Florida, pp. 574-616.
- 25 **Jaap**, W.C. and F.J. Sargent, 1994: The status of the remnant population of *Acropora cervicornis*
26 (Lamarck, 1816) at Dry Tortugas National Park, Florida, with a discussion of possible
27 causes of changes since 1881. In: *Proceedings of the Colloquium on Global Aspects of*
28 *Coral Reefs: Health, Hazards and History* [Ginsburg, R.N. (ed.)] Rosenstiel School of
29 Marine and Atmospheric Science, University of Miami, pp. 101-105.
- 30 **Jackson**, J.B.C., M.X. Kirby, W.H. Berger, K.A. Bjorndal, L.W. Botsford, B.J. Bourque, R.H.
31 Bradbury, R. Cooke, J. Erlandson, J.A. Estes, T.P. Hughes, S. Kidwell, C.B. Lange, H.S.
32 Lenihan, J.M. Pandolfi, C.H. Peterson, R.S. Steneck, M.J. Tegner, and R.R. Warner,

- 1 2001: Historical overfishing and the recent collapse of coastal ecosystems. *Science*, **293**,
2 629-638.
- 3 **Jameson**, S.C., M.H. Tupper, and J.M. Ridley, 2002: The three screen doors: can marine"
4 protected" areas be effective? *Marine Pollution Bulletin*, **44(11)**, 1177-1183.
- 5 **Johns**, G.M., V.R. Leeworthy, F.W. Bell, and M.A. Bonn, 2003: *Socioeconomic Study of Reefs*
6 *in Southeast Florida*. Final Report October 19, 2001 as Revised April 18, 2003 for
7 Broward County, Palm Beach County, Miami-Dade County, Monroe County, Florida
8 Fish and Wildlife Conservation Commission, National Oceanic and Atmospheric
9 Administration, Hollywood, FL.
- 10 **Johnson**, J. and P. Marshall, 2007: *Climate Change and the Great Barrier Reef: a Vulnerability*
11 *Assessment*. Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority.
- 12 **Jokiel**, P.L., 1987: Ecology, biogeography and evolution of corals in Hawaii. *Trends in Ecology*
13 *& Evolution*, **2(7)**, 179-182.
- 14 **Jokiel**, P.L. and E.K. Brown, 2004: Global warming, regional trends and inshore environmental
15 conditions influence coral bleaching in Hawaii. *Global Change Biology*, **10(10)**, 1627-
16 1641.
- 17 **Jokiel**, P.L., E.K. Brown, A. Friedlander, S.K. Rodgers, and W.R. Smith, 2004: Hawaii coral
18 reef assessment and monitoring program: spatial patterns and temporal dynamics in reef
19 coral communities. *Pacific Science*, **58(2)**, 159-174.
- 20 **Jokiel**, P.L. and S.L. Coles, 1990: Response of Hawaiian and other Indo-Pacific reef corals to
21 elevated temperature. *Coral Reefs*, **8(4)**, 155-162.
- 22 **Jones**, G.P., M.J. Milicich, M.J. Emslie, and C. Lunow, 1999: Self-recruitment in a coral reef
23 fish population. *Nature*, **402(6763)**, 802-804.
- 24 **Jones**, G.P., S. Planes, and S.R. Thorrold, 2005: Coral reef fish larvae settle close to home.
25 *Current Biology*, **15(14)**, 1314-1318.
- 26 **Jones**, J.A., 1977: Morphology and development of southeastern Florida patch reefs. In:
27 *Proceedings of the 3rd International Coral Reef Symposium* University of Miami, pp.
28 232-235.
- 29 **Jonsson**, L.G., P.G. Nilsson, F. Floruta, and T. Lundaely, 2004: Distributional patterns of macro-
30 and megafauna associated with a reef of the cold-water coral *Lophelia pertusa* on the
31 Swedish west coast. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **284**, 163-171.

- 1 **Kaiser**, M.J., 2005: Are marine protected areas a red herring or fisheries panacea? *Canadian*
2 *Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*, **62(5)**, 1194-1199.
- 3 **Kaufman**, L., J. B. C. Jackson, E. Sala, P. Chisolm, E. D. Gomez, C. Peterson, R. V. Salm, and
4 G. Llewellyn, 2004: Restoring and maintaining marine ecosystem function, In: *Defying*
5 *Ocean's End*, [Glover, L.K. and S.A. Earle (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp.
6 165-181.
- 7 **Kay**, E.A. and S.R. Palumbi, 1987: Endemism and evolution in Hawaiian marine invertebrates.
8 *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **2**, 183-186.
- 9 **Kelleher**, G., C. Bleakley, and S. Wells, 1995: A global system of Marine Protected Areas. *Vols*
10 *I to IV*.
- 11 **Keller**, B.D. and B.D. Causey, 2005: Linkages between the Florida Keys National Marine
12 Sanctuary and the South Florida Ecosystem Restoration Initiative. *Ocean & Coastal*
13 *Management*, **48(11-12)**, 869-900.
- 14 **Keller**, B.D. and S. Donahue, 2006: *2002-03 Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary Science*
15 *Report: an Ecosystem Report Card After Five Years of Marine Zoning*. Marine
16 Sanctuaries Conservation Series NMSP-06-12, U.S. Department of Commerce, National
17 Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Sanctuary Program, Silver
18 Spring, MD, pp.1-358.
- 19 **Kennedy**, V.S., R.R. Twilley, J.A. Kleypas, J.H. Cowan, Jr., and S.R. Hare, 2002: *Coastal and*
20 *Marine Ecosystems & Global Climate Change: Potential Effects on U.S. Resources*.
21 Prepared for the Pew Center on Global Climate Change, Pew Center on Global Climate
22 Change, Arlington, VA.
- 23 **Kenyon**, J. and R.E. Brainard, 2006: Second recorded episode of mass coral bleaching in the
24 Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **543**, 505-523.
- 25 **Kenyon**, J.C., P.S. Vroom, K.N. Page, M.J. Dunlap, C.B. Wilkinson, and G.S. Aeby, 2006:
26 Community structure of hermatypic corals at French Frigate Shoals, Northwestern
27 Hawaiian Islands: capacity for resistance and resilience to selective stressors. *Pacific*
28 *Science*, **60(2)**, 153-175.
- 29 **Khamer**, M., D. Bouya, and C. Ronneau, 2000: Metallic and organic pollutants associated with
30 urban wastewater in the waters and sediments of a Moroccan river. *Water Quality*
31 *Research Journal of Canada*, **35**, 147-161.
- 32 **Kiessling**, W., 2001: Paleoclimatic significance of Phanerozoic reefs. *Geology*, **29(8)**, 751-754.

- 1 **Kim, K.** and C.D. Harvell, 2004: The rise and fall of a six-year coral-fungal epizootic. *American*
2 *Naturalist*, **164**, S52-S63.
- 3 **Kimball, M.E.,** J.M. Miller, P.E. Whitfield, and J.A. Hare, 2004: Thermal tolerance and
4 potential distribution of invasive lionfish (*Pterois volitans/miles* complex) on the east
5 coast of the United States. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **283**, 269-278.
- 6 **Kinlan, B.P.** and S.D. Gaines, 2003: Propagule dispersal in marine and terrestrial environments:
7 a community perspective. *Ecology*, **84(8)**, 2007-2020.
- 8 **Kleypas, J.A.,** 2006: Constraints on predicting coral reef response to climate change, In:
9 *Geological Approaches to Coral Reef Ecology*, [Aronson, R. (ed.)]. Springer, Verlag,
10 NY, pp. 386-424.
- 11 **Kleypas, J.A.,** R.W. Buddemeier, D. Archer, J.P. Gattuso, C. Langdon, and B.N. Opdyke, 1999:
12 Geochemical consequences of increased atmospheric carbon dioxide on coral reefs.
13 *Science*, **284(5411)**, 118-120.
- 14 **Kleypas, J.A.,** R.W. Buddemeier, and J.P. Gattuso, 2001: The future of coral reefs in an age of
15 global change. *International Journal of Earth Sciences*, **90(2)**, 426-437.
- 16 **Kleypas, J.A.** and C. Langdon, 2006: Coral reefs and changing seawater chemistry, In: *Coral*
17 *Reefs and Climate Change: Science and Management*, [Phinney, J.T., O. Hoegh-
18 Guldborg, J. Kleypas, W.J. Skirving, and A. Strong (eds.)]. American Geophysical
19 Union, Washington, DC, pp. 73-110.
- 20 **Kleypas, J.A.,** J.W. McManus, and L.A.B. Mendez, 1999: Environmental limits to coral reef
21 development: where do we draw the line? *Integrative and Comparative Biology*, **39(1)**,
22 146-159.
- 23 **Koslow, J.A.,** K. Gowlett-Holmes, J.K. Lowry, T. O'Hara, G.C.B. Poore, and A. Williams, 2001:
24 Seamount benthic macrofauna off southern Tasmania: community structure and impacts
25 of trawling. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **213**, 111-125.
- 26 **Krieger, K.J.** and B.L. Wing, 2002: Megafauna associations with deepwater corals (*Primnoa*
27 *spp.*) in the Gulf of Alaska. *Hydrobiologia*, **471(1-3)**, 83-90.
- 28 **Krupp, D.A.,** L.L. Hollingsworth, and J. Peterka, 2006: Elevated temperature sensitivity of
29 fertilization and early development in the mushroom coral, *Fungia scutaria*. In:
30 *Proceedings of the 10th International Coral Reef Symposium* 28, June 2004, pp. 71-77.
- 31 **Kuta, K.G.** and L.L. Richardson, 1996: Abundance and distribution of black band disease on
32 coral reefs in the northern Florida keys. *Coral Reefs*, **15(4)**, 219-223.

- 1 **Ladah**, L., J. Zertuche-Gonzalez, and G. Hernandez-Carmona, 1999: Rapid recovery giant kelp
2 (*Macrocystis pyrifera*, Phaeophyceae) recruitment near its southern limit in Baja
3 California after mass disappearance during ENSO 1997-1998. *Journal of Phycology*, **35**,
4 1106-1112.
- 5 **Lafferty**, K.D. and D. Kushner, 2000: Population regulation of the purple sea urchin,
6 *Strongylocentrotus purpuratus*, at the California Channel Islands. *Fifth California Islands*
7 *Symposium. Santa Barbara, California: Minerals Management Service*, 379-381.
- 8 **Law**, R. and K. Stokes, 2005: Evolutionary impacts of fishing on target populations, In: *Marine*
9 *Conservation Biology: the Science of Maintaining the Sea's Biodiversity*, [Norse, E. and
10 L.B. Crowder (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 232-246.
- 11 **Lebel**, L., J.M. Anderies, B. Campbell, C. Folke, S. Hatfield-Dodds, T.P. Hughes, and J. Wilson,
12 2006: Governance and the capacity to manage resilience in regional social-ecological
13 systems. *Ecology and Society*, **11(1)**, 19.
- 14 **Lecchini**, D., S. Planes, and R. Galzin, 2005: Experimental assessment of sensory modalities of
15 coral-reef fish larvae in the recognition of their settlement habitat. *Behavioral Ecology*
16 *and Sociobiology*, **58(1)**, 18-26.
- 17 **Lecchini**, D., J. Shima, B. Banaigs, and R. Galzin, 2005: Larval sensory abilities and
18 mechanisms of habitat selection of a coral reef fish during settlement. *Oecologia*, **143(2)**,
19 326-334.
- 20 **Lee**, S.Y., 1995: Mangrove outwelling: a review. *Hydrobiologia*, **295(1-3)**, 203-212.
- 21 **Lee**, T.N., C. Rooth, E. Williams, M. McGowan, and A.F. Szmant, 1992: Influence of Florida
22 current, gyres and wind-driven circulation on transport of larvae and recruitment in the
23 Florida Keys coral reefs. *Continental Shelf Research*, **12(7/8)**, 971-1002.
- 24 **Lee**, T.N., E. Williams, E. Johns, D. Wilson, and N. P. Smith, 2002: Transport processes linking
25 south Florida coastal ecosystems, In: *The Everglades, Florida Bay, and Coral Reefs of*
26 *the Florida Keys: an Ecosystem Sourcebook*, [Porter, J.W. and K.G. Porter (eds.)]. CRC
27 Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp. 309-342.
- 28 **Leeworthy**, V.R. and P.C. Wiley, 2003: *Profiles and Economic Contribution: General Visitors*
29 *to Monroe County, Florida 2000-2001*. National Oceanic and Atmospheric
30 Administration, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-24.
- 31 **Leeworthy**, V.R., P.C. Wiley, and J.D. Hospital, 2004: *Importance-Satisfaction Ratings Five-*
32 *Year Comparison, SPA and ER Use, and Socioeconomic and Ecological Monitoring*

- 1 *Comparison of Results 1995-96 to 2000-01*. National Oceanic and Atmospheric
2 Administration, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-59.
- 3 **Leis, J.M., B.M. Carson-Ewart, and J. Webley, 2002:** Settlement behaviour of coral-reef fish
4 larvae at subsurface artificial-reef moorings. *Marine & Freshwater Research*, **53(2)**, 319-
5 327.
- 6 **Leis, J.M. and M. I. McCormick, 2002:** The biology, behavior, and ecology of the pelagic, larval
7 stage of coral reef fishes, Academic Press, San Diego, CA, pp. 171-199.
- 8 **Lessios, H.A., D.R. Robertson, and J.D. Cubit, 1984:** Spread of *Diadema* mass mortality through
9 the Caribbean. *Science*, **226(4672)**, 335-337.
- 10 **Levin, L.A., 2006:** Recent progress in understanding larval dispersal: new directions and
11 digressions. *Integrative and Comparative Biology*, **46(3)**, 282-297.
- 12 **Levitus, S., J.I. Antonov, T.P. Boyer, and C. Stephens, 2000:** Warming of the world ocean.
13 *Science*, **287**, 2225-2229.
- 14 **Lighty, R.G., I.G. Macintyre, and R. Stuckenrath, 1978:** Submerged early Holocene barrier reef
15 south-east Florida shelf. *Nature*, **276(5683)**, 59-60.
- 16 **Lirman, D. and P. Fong, 2007:** Is proximity to land-based sources of coral stressors an
17 appropriate measure of risk to coral reefs? An example from the Florida Reef tract.
18 *Marine Pollution Bulletin*, **54**, 779-791.
- 19 **Lotze, H.K., H.S. Lenihan, B.J. Bourque, R.H. Bradbury, R.G. Cooke, M.C. Kay, S.M. Kidwell,**
20 **M.X. Kirby, C.H. Peterson, and J.B.C. Jackson, 2006:** Depletion, degradation, and
21 recovery potential of estuaries and coastal seas. *Science*, **312(5781)**, 1806-1809.
- 22 **Lough, J., 2007:** Climate and climate change scenarios for the great barrier reef, In: *Climate*
23 *Change and the Great Barrier Reef*, [Johnson, J. and P. Marshall (eds.)]. Great Barrier
24 Reef Marine Park Authority, Townsville.
- 25 **Lovelace, J.K. and B.F. MacPherson, 1998:** *Effects of Hurricane Andrew on Wetlands in*
26 *Southern Florida and Louisiana*. National Water Summary on Wetland Resources USGS
27 Water Supply Paper #2425.
- 28 **Lugo-Fernandez, A., K.J.P. Deslarzes, J.M. Price, G.S. Boland, and M.V. Morin, 2001:**
29 Inferring probable dispersal of Flower Garden Banks Coral Larvae (Gulf of Mexico)
30 using observed and simulated drifter trajectories. *Continental Shelf Research*, **21(1)**, 47-
31 67.

- 1 **Luppi**, T.A., E.D. Spivak, and C.C. Bas, 2003: The effects of temperature and salinity on larval
2 development of *Armases rubripes* Rathbun, 1897 (Brachyura, Grapsoidea, Sesarmidae),
3 and the southern limit of its geographical distribution. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf*
4 *Science*, **58(3)**, 575-585.
- 5 **Mantua**, N.J., S.R. Hare, Y. Zhang, J.M. Wallace, and R.C. Francis, 1997: A pacific
6 interdecadal climate oscillation with impacts on salmon production. *Bulletin of the*
7 *American Meteorological Society*, **78(6)**, 1069-1079.
- 8 **Maragos**, J.E., D.C. Potts, G. Aeby, D. Gulko, J. Kenyon, D. Siciliano, and D. VanRavenswaay,
9 2004: 2000-2002 Rapid ecological assessment of corals (*Anthozoa*) on shallow reefs of
10 the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. Part 1: species and distribution. *Pacific Science*,
11 **58(2)**, 211-230.
- 12 **Marchetti**, M.P., P.B. Moyle, and R. Levine, 2004: Invasive species profiling? Exploring the
13 characteristics of non-native fishes across invasion stages in California. *Freshwater*
14 *Biology*, **49(5)**, 646-661.
- 15 **Marschke**, M.J. and F. Berkes, 2006: Exploring strategies that build livelihood resilience: a case
16 from Cambodia. *Ecology and Society*, **11(1)**, 42.
- 17 **Marshall**, N., In Press: Can policy perception influence social resilience to policy change?
18 *Fisheries Research*.
- 19 **Marshall**, P. and H. Schuttenberg, 2006a: *A Reef Manager's Guide to Coral Bleaching*. Great
20 Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority, pp.1-178.
- 21 **Marshall**, P. and H. Schuttenberg, 2006b: Adapting coral reef management in the face of climate
22 change, In: *Coral Reefs and Climate Change: Science and Management*, [Phinney, J.T.,
23 O. Hoegh-Guldberg, J. Kleypas, W.J. Skirving, and A. Strong (eds.)]. American
24 Geophysical Union, Washington, DC, pp. 223-241.
- 25 **McCarthy**, J., O. Canziani, N. Leary, D. Dokken, and K. White, 2001: *Climate Change 2001:*
26 *Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability*. GRID-Arendal.
- 27 **McCarty**, J.P., 2001: Ecological consequences of recent climate change. *Conservation Biology*,
28 **15(2)**, 320-331.
- 29 **McClanahan**, T.R., M.J. Marnane, J.E. Cinner, and W.E. Kiene, 2006: A comparison of marine
30 protected areas and alternative approaches to coral-reef management. *Current Biology*,
31 **16(14)**, 1408-1413.

- 1 **McClanahan**, T.R., N. V. C. Polunin, and T. J. Done, 2002: Resilience of coral reefs, In:
2 *Resilience and Behaviour of Large-Scale Ecosystems*, [Gunderson, L.H. and L. Pritchard,
3 Jr. (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 111-163.
- 4 **McCoy**, E.D., H.R. Mushinsky, D. Johnson, and W.E. Meshaka Jr, 1996: Mangrove damage
5 caused by Hurricane Andrew on the southwestern coast of Florida. *Bulletin of Marine*
6 *Science*, **59(1)**, 1-8.
- 7 **McGowan**, J.A., D.R. Cayan, L.M. Dorman, and A. Butler, 1998: Climate-ocean variability and
8 ecosystem response in the Northeast Pacific. *Science*, **281(5374)**, 210-217.
- 9 **McGregor**, H.V., M. Dima, H.W. Fischer, and S. Mulitza, 2007: Rapid 20th-century increase in
10 coastal upwelling off northwest Africa. *Science*, **315(5812)**, 637.
- 11 **McLeod**, E. and R.V. Salm, 2006: *Managing Mangroves for Resilience to Climate Change*. The
12 World Conservation Union, Gland, Switzerland, pp.1-66.
- 13 **McNaughton**, S.J., 1977: Diversity and stability of ecological communities: a comment on the
14 role of empiricism in ecology. *The American Naturalist*, **111(979)**, 515-525.
- 15 **McPhaden**, M.J. and D. Zhang, 2002: Slowdown of the meridional overturning circulation in the
16 upper Pacific Ocean. *Nature*, **415(6872)**, 603-608.
- 17 **Michaelidis**, B., B.C. Ouzounis, A. Paleras, and H.O. Portner, 2005: Effects of long-term
18 moderate hypercapnia on acid-base balance and growth rate in marine mussels *Mytilus*
19 *galloprovincialis*. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **293**, 109-118.
- 20 **Micheli**, F., B.S. Halpern, L.W. Botsford, and R.R. Warner, 2004: Trajectories and correlates of
21 community change in no-take marine reserves. *Ecological Applications*, **14(6)**, 1709-
22 1723.
- 23 **Millennium Ecosystem Assessment**, 2005: *Ecosystems and Human Well-Being: Current State*
24 *and Trends. Findings of the Condition and Trends Working Group*. Island Press,
25 Washington, DC.
- 26 **Miller**, J., R. Waara, E. Muller, and C. Rogers, 2006: Coral bleaching and disease combine to
27 cause extensive mortality on reefs in US Virgin Islands. *Coral Reefs*, **25(3)**, 418-418.
- 28 **Miller**, S.L., M. Chiappone, D.W. Swanson, J.S. Ault, S.G. Smith, G.A. Meester, J. Luo, E.C.
29 Franklin, J.A. Bohnsack, D.E. Harper, and D.B. McClellan, 2001: An extensive deep reef
30 terrace on the Tortugas bank, Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary. *Coral Reefs*,
31 299-300.

- 1 **Miller**, S.L., M. Chiappone, L.M. Rutten, D.W. Swanson, and B. Shank, 2005: *Rapid*
2 *Assessment and Monitoring of Coral Reef Habitats in the Florida Keys National Marine*
3 *Sanctuary: Quick Look Report: Summer 2005 Keys-Wide Sampling*. National Undersea
4 Research Center, University of North Carolina at Wilmington, Wilmington, NC.
- 5 **Miller**, S.L., D.W. Swanson, and M. Chiappone, 2002: Multiple spatial scale assessment of coral
6 reef and hard-bottom community structure in the Florida Keys National Marine
7 Sanctuary. In: *Proceedings of the 9th International Coral Reef Symposium* , pp. 69-74.
- 8 **Mills**, L.S., M.E. Soulé, and D.F. Doak, 1993: The keystone-species concept in ecology and
9 conservation. *BioScience*, **43(4)**, 219-224.
- 10 **Monterey Bay National Marine Sanctuary**, 2007: Water quality protection program for the
11 MBNMS. Monterey Bay National Marine Sanctuary Website,
12 <http://www.mbnms.nos.noaa.gov/resourcepro/water-pro.html>, accessed on 5-23-2007.
- 13 **Moore**, M.V., M.L. Pace, J.R. Mather, P.S. Murdoch, R.W. Howarth, C.L. Folt, C.Y. Chen, H.F.
14 Hemond, P.A. Flebbe, and C.T. Driscoll, 1997: Potential effects of climate change on
15 freshwater ecosystems of the New England/Mid-Atlantic Region. *Hydrological*
16 *Processes*, **11**, 925-947.
- 17 **Mora**, C., S. Andréfouët, M.J. Costello, C. Kranenburg, A. Rollo, J. Veron, K.J. Gaston, and
18 R.A. Myers, 2006: Coral Reefs and the Global Network of Marine Protected Areas.
19 *Science*, **312**, 1750-1751.
- 20 **Mosquera**, I., I.M. Cote, S. Jennings, and J.D. Reynolds, 2000: Conservation benefits of marine
21 reserves for fish populations. *Animal Conservation*, **3(4)**, 321-332.
- 22 **Moyle**, P.B., 1986: Fish introductions into North America: patterns and ecological impact, In:
23 *Ecology of Biological Invasions of North America and Hawaii*, [Mooney, H.A. and J.A.
24 Drake (eds.)]. Springer, NY, pp. 27-43.
- 25 **Mullineaux**, L.S. and C.A. Butman, 1991: Initial contact, exploration and attachment of barnacle
26 (*Balanus amphitrite*) cyprids settling in flow. *Marine Biology*, **110(1)**, 93-103.
- 27 **Mumby**, P.J., C.P. Dahlgren, A.R. Harborne, C.V. Kappel, F. Micheli, D.R. Brumbaugh, K.E.
28 Holmes, J.M. Mendes, K. Broad, and J.N. Sanchirico, 2006: Fishing, trophic cascades,
29 and the process of grazing on coral reefs. *Science*, **311(5757)**, 98-101.
- 30 **Mumby**, P.J., A.J. Edwards, J.E. Arias-Gonzalez, K.C. Lindeman, P.G. Blackwell, A. Gall, M.I.
31 Gorczyńska, A.R. Harborne, C.L. Pescod, H. Renken, C.C.C. Wabnitz, and G. Llewellyn,
32 2004: Mangroves enhance the biomass of coral reef fish communities in the Caribbean.
33 *Nature*, **427(6974)**, 533-536.

- 1 **Munday, P.L., G. P. Jones, M. Sheaves, A. J. Williams, and G. Goby, 2007: Vulnerability of**
2 **fishes of the Great Barrier Reef to climate change, In: *Climate Change and the Great***
3 ***Barrier Reef*, [Johnson, J. and P. Marshall (eds.)]. Great Barrier Reef Marine Park**
4 **Authority, Townsville.**
- 5 **Mundy, B.C., 2005: *Checklist of the Fishes of the Hawaiian Archipelago*. Bishop Museum**
6 **Press, Honolulu, Hawaii.**
- 7 **Munn, C.B., 2006: Viruses as pathogens of marine organisms—from bacteria to whales. *Journal***
8 ***of the Marine Biological Association of the UK*, **86(3)**, 453-467.**
- 9 **Murawski, S.A., 1993: Climate change and marine fish distributions: forecasting from historical**
10 **analogy. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*, **122(5)**, 647-658.**
- 11 **Murray, S.N. and M.M. Littler, 1981: Biogeographical analysis of intertidal macrophyte floras**
12 **of southern California. *Journal of Biogeography*, **8(5)**, 339-351.**
- 13 **Mydlarz, L.D., L.E. Jones, and C.D. Harvell, 2006: Innate immunity, environmental drivers, and**
14 **disease ecology of marine and freshwater invertebrates. *Annual Review of Ecology,***
15 ***Evolution and Systematics*, **37**, 251-288.**
- 16 **Myers, R.A. and B. Worm, 2003: Rapid worldwide depletion of predatory fish communities.**
17 ***Nature*, **423(6937)**, 280-283.**
- 18 **Myers, R.A. and B. Worm, 2005: Extinction, survival or recovery of large predatory fishes.**
19 ***Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London, Series B: Biological***
20 ***Sciences*, **360(1453)**, 13-20.**
- 21 **Nagelkerken, I., M. Dorenbosch, W. Verberk, E.C. de la Moriniere, and G. van der Velde, 2000:**
22 **Importance of shallow-water biotopes of a Caribbean bay for juvenile coral reef fishes:**
23 **patterns in biotope association, community structure and spatial distribution. *Marine***
24 ***Ecology Progress Series*, **202**, 175-192.**
- 25 **National Center for Marine Protected Areas, 2006: *Draft Framework for Developing the***
26 ***National System of Marine Protected Areas*. National Center for Marine Protected Areas,**
27 **Silver Spring, MD.**
- 28 **National Marine Fisheries Service, 2003: *Annual Report to Congress on the Status of U.S.***
29 ***Fisheries - 2002*. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric**
30 **Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-156.**
- 31 **National Marine Fisheries Service, 2005: *2005 Report on the Status of U.S. Marine Fish***
32 ***Stocks*. National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-20.**

- 1 **National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2006a:** History of the National Marine Sanctuaries.
2 NOAA's National Marine Sanctuaries Website, <http://sanctuaries.noaa.gov/about/history>,
3 accessed on 7-29-2007a.
- 4 **National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2006b:** Maritime heritage program. National Marine
5 Sanctuaries Program Webpage,
6 <http://www.sanctuaries.nos.noaa.gov/maritime/welcome.html>, accessed on 5-18-2007b.
- 7 **National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2006c:** National Marine Sanctuary system and field
8 sites. National Marine Sanctuaries Program Webpage,
9 <http://www.sanctuaries.nos.noaa.gov/visit/welcome.html>, accessed on 5-18-2007c.
- 10 **National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2007a:** Monitor Marine National Monument home page.
11 NOAA's National Marine Sanctuaries Website, <http://monitor.noaa.gov/>, accessed on 7-
12 27-2007a.
- 13 **National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2-6-2007b:** National Marine Sanctuaries advisory
14 council's information. NOAA Website,
15 <http://sanctuaries.noaa.gov/management/ac/welcome.html>, accessed on 7-27-2007b.
- 16 **National Marine Sanctuary Program, 5-21-2007c:** National Marine Sanctuaries condition
17 reports. NOAA Website, <http://sanctuaries.noaa.gov/science/condition/>, accessed on 7-
18 27-2007c.
- 19 **National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2-8-2007d:** Ocean etiquette. NOAA's National Marine
20 Sanctuaries Website, <http://sanctuaries.noaa.gov/protect/oceanetiquette.html>, accessed on
21 7-27-2007d.
- 22 **National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2007e:** Thunder Bay National Marine Sanctuary home
23 page. NOAA's National Marine Sanctuaries Website, <http://thunderbay.noaa.gov/>,
24 accessed on 7-27-2007e.
- 25 **National Ocean Service, 2000:** Spatial patterns of socioeconomic data from 1970 to 2000: a
26 national research dataset aggregated by watershed and political boundaries.
- 27 **National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, 2006a:** Marine Protected Areas of the
28 United States: marine managed areas inventory. Marine Protected Areas Website,
29 <http://www3.mpa.gov/exploreinv/AlphaSearch.aspx>, accessed on 2006a.
- 30 **National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, 12-15-2006b:** NOAA's coral health and
31 monitoring homepage. NOAA Website, <http://www.coral.noaa.gov/seakeys/index.shtml>,
32 accessed on 7-27-2007b.

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **Marine Protected Areas**

- 1 **National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration**, 2007a: Coral reef watch program. NOAA
2 Website, <http://coralreefwatch.noaa.gov/>, accessed on 5-23-2007a.
- 3 **National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration**, 5-31-2007b: NOAA's coral reef
4 information system. NOAA Website, <http://www.coris.noaa.gov/>, accessed on 7-27-
5 2007b.
- 6 **National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration**, 2007c: NOAA's south Florida ecosystem
7 research and monitoring program. NOAA Website,
8 <http://www.aoml.noaa.gov/sfp/data.shtml>, accessed on 7-27-2007c.
- 9 **National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration**, 2007d: Zones in the Florida Keys
10 National Marine Sanctuary. NOAA Website, NOAA,
11 http://www.floridakeys.noaa.gov/research_monitoring/map.html, accessed on 7-1-2007d.
- 12 **National Park Service**, 1-18-2007: Dry Tortugas National Park - research natural area will be
13 effective January 19, 2007. National Park Service Website,
14 <http://www.nps.gov/drto/parknews/researchnaturalarea.htm>, accessed on 7-26-2007.
- 15 **National Research Council**, 1999: *Sustaining Marine Fisheries*. National Academy Press,
16 Washington, DC, pp.1-164.
- 17 **National Research Council**, 2001: *Marine Protected Areas: Tools for Sustaining Ocean*
18 *Ecosystems*. National Academy Press, Washington, DC, pp.1-272.
- 19 **National Safety Council**, 1998: *Coastal Challenges: a Guide to Coastal and Marine Issues*.
20 Environmental Health Center, Washington, DC, pp.1-365.
- 21 **Naylor, R.L., R.J. Goldburg, J. Primavera, N. Kautsky, M.C.M. Beveridge, J. Clay, C. Folke, J.**
22 **Lubchenco, H. Mooney, and M. Troell**, 2000: Effects of aquaculture on world fish
23 supplies. *Nature*, **405(6790)**, 1017-1024.
- 24 **Nicholls, R.J. and S.P. Leatherman**, 1996: Adapting to sea-level rise: relative sea-level trends to
25 2100 for the United States. *Coastal Management*, **24(4)**, 301-324.
- 26 **NOAA Coast Watch Program**, 2007: Harmful algae bloom bulletin home page. NOAA
27 Website, Harmful Algae Bloom Bulletin,
28 http://coastwatch.noaa.gov/hab/bulletins_ms.htm, accessed on 7-27-2007.
- 29 **NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service**, 2007: Coral reef ecosystems - ecological
30 assessment, marine debris removal, oceanography, habitat mapping. NOAA Website,
31 <http://www.pifsc.noaa.gov/cred/>, accessed on 5-24-2007.

- 1 **NOAA National Ocean Service**, 2006: NOAA's National Ocean Service: program offices.
2 NOAA Website, <http://www.oceanservice.noaa.gov/programs/>, accessed on 7-29-2007.
- 3 **NOAA Satellite and Information Service**, 2007: NOAA coral reef watch satellite bleaching
4 monitoring datasets. NOAA Website, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration,
5 <http://coralreefwatch.noaa.gov/satellite/ge/>, accessed on 7-27-2007.
- 6 **Norse**, E.A., 1993: Global marine biological diversity: a strategy for building conservation into
7 decision making, [Norse, E.A. (ed.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 1-383.
- 8 **Nyström**, M., C. Folke, and F. Moberg, 2000: Coral reef disturbance and resilience in a human-
9 dominated environment. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution*, **15(10)**, 413-420.
- 10 **O'Connor**, M.I., J.F. Bruno, S.D. Gaines, B.S. Halpern, S.E. Lester, B.P. Kinlan, and J.M.
11 Weiss, 2007: Temperature control of larval dispersal and the implications for marine
12 ecology, evolution, and conservation. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*
13 *of the United States of America*, **104**, 1266-1271.
- 14 **Obura**, D., B. D. Causey, and J. Church, 2006: Management response to a bleaching event, In:
15 *Coral Reefs and Climate Change: Science and Management*, [Phinney, J.T., O. Hoegh-
16 Guldberg, J. Kleypas, W.J. Skirving, and A. Strong (eds.)]. American Geophysical
17 Union, Washington, DC, pp. 181-206.
- 18 **Odum**, E.P., 1969: A research challenge: evaluating the productivity of coastal and estuarine
19 water. In: *Proceedings of the Second Sea Grant Conference* University of Rhode Island,
20 pp. 63-64.
- 21 **Ogden**, J.C. and E.H. Gladfelter, 1983: *Coral Reefs, Seagrass Beds and Mangroves: Their*
22 *Interaction in the Coastal Zones of the Caribbean*. UNESCO Reports in Marine Science
23 **23**, pp.1-133.
- 24 **Oliver**, J., 1985: Recurrent seasonal bleaching and mortality of corals on the Great Barrier Reef.
25 In: *Proceedings of the 5th International Coral Reef Symposium* , pp. 201-206.
- 26 **Orr**, J.C., V.J. Fabry, O. Aumont, L. Bopp, S.C. Doney, R.A. Feely, A. Gnanadesikan, N.
27 Gruber, A. Ishida, F. Joos, R.M. Key, K. Lindsay, E. Maier-Reimer, R. Matear, P.
28 Monfray, A. Mouchet, R.G. Najjar, G.K. Plattner, K.B. Rodgers, C.L. Sabine, J.L.
29 Sarmiento, R. Schlitzer, R.D. Slater, I.J. Totterdell, M.F. Weirig, Y. Yamanaka, and A.
30 Yool, 2005: Anthropogenic ocean acidification over the twenty-first century and its
31 impact on calcifying organisms. *Nature*, **437**, 681-686.
- 32 **Orth**, R.J., T.J.B. Carruthers, W.C. Dennison, C.M. Duarte, J.W. Fourqurean, K.L.Jr. Heck,
33 A.R. Hughes, G.A. Kendrick, W.J. Kenworthy, S. Olyarnik, F.T. Short, M. Waycott, and

- 1 S.L. Williams, 2006: A global crisis for seagrass ecosystems. *BioScience*, **56(12)**, 987-
2 996.
- 3 **Paine**, R.T., 1993: A salty and salutary perspective on global change, In: *Biotic Interactions and*
4 *Global Change*, [Kareiva, P.M., J.G. Kingsolver, and R.B. Huey (eds.)]. Sinauer
5 Associates, Inc., Sunderland, Massachusetts, pp. 347-355.
- 6 **Paine**, R.T., M.J. Tegner, and E.A. Johnson, 1998: Compounded perturbations yield ecological
7 surprises. *Ecosystems*, **1(6)**, 535-545.
- 8 **Palumbi**, S.R., 2001: The ecology of marine protected areas, In: *Marine Community Ecology*,
9 [Bertness, M.D., S.D. Gaines, and M.E. Hay (eds.)]. Sinauer Associates, Inc.,
10 Sunderland, MA, pp. 509-530.
- 11 **Palumbi**, S.R., 2002: *Marine Reserves: a Tool for Ecosystem Management and Conservation*.
12 Pew Oceans Commission, Arlington, VA, pp.1-45.
- 13 **Palumbi**, S.R., 2003: Population genetics, demographic connectivity, and the design of marine
14 reserves. *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S146-S158.
- 15 **Palumbi**, S.R., 2004: Marine reserves and ocean neighborhoods: the spatial scale of marine
16 populations and their management. *Annual Review of Environment and Resources*, **29**,
17 31-68.
- 18 **Palumbi**, S.R., G. Grabowsky, T. Duda, L. Geyer, and N. Tachino, 1997: Speciation and
19 population genetic structure in tropical Pacific sea urchins. *Evolution*, **51(5)**, 1506-1517.
- 20 **Pandolfi**, J.M., R.H. Bradbury, E. Sala, T.P. Hughes, K.A. Bjorndal, R.G. Cooke, D. McArdle,
21 L. McClenachan, M.J.H. Newman, G. Paredes, R.R. Warner, and J.B.C. Jackson, 2003:
22 Global trajectories of the long-term decline of coral reef ecosystems. *Science*, **301(5635)**,
23 955-958.
- 24 **Pandolfi**, J.M., J.B.C. Jackson, N. Baron, R.H. Bradbury, H.M. Guzman, T.P. Hughes, C.V.
25 Kappel, F. Micheli, J.C. Ogden, H.P. Possingham, and E. Sala, 2005: Are U. S. coral
26 reefs on the slippery slope to slime? *Science*, **307(5716)**, 1725-1726.
- 27 **Pane**, E.F. and J.P. Barry, 2007: Extracellular acid-base regulation during short-term
28 hypercapnia is effective in a shallow-water crab, but ineffective in a deep-sea crab.
29 *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **334**, 1-9.
- 30 **Paris**, C.B. and R.K. Cowen, 2004: Direct evidence of a biophysical retention mechanism for
31 coral reef fish larvae. *Limnology and Oceanography*, **49(6)**, 1964-1979.

- 1 **Parks, J.** and N. Salafsky, 2001: *Fish for the Future? A Collaborative Test of Locally-Managed*
2 *Marine Areas As a Biodiversity Conservation and Fisheries Management Tool in the*
3 *Indo-Pacific Region: Report on the Initiation of a Learning Portfolio.* World Resources
4 Institute, Washington, DC, pp.1-82.
- 5 **Partnership for Interdisciplinary Studies of Coastal Oceans**, 2005: The science of marine
6 reserves. Partnership for Interdisciplinary Studies of Coastal Oceans Website,
7 <http://www.piscoweb.org/outreach/pubs/reserves>, accessed on 5-23-2007.
- 8 **Pauly, D., J. Alder, E. Bennett, V. Christensen, P. Tyedmers, and R. Watson**, 2003: The future
9 for fisheries. *Science*, **302(5649)**, 1359-1361.
- 10 **Pauly, D., V. Christensen, J. Dalsgaard, R. Froese, and F. Torres Jr**, 1998: Fishing down marine
11 food webs. *Science*, **279(5352)**, 860-863.
- 12 **Pauly, D., V. Christensen, S. Guθnette, T.J. Pitcher, U.R. Sumaila, C.J. Walters, R. Watson, and**
13 **D. Zeller**, 2002: Towards sustainability in world fisheries. *Nature*, **418**, 689-695.
- 14 **Pechenik, J.A.**, 1999: On the advantages and disadvantages of larval stages in benthic marine
15 invertebrate life cycles. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **177**, 269-297.
- 16 **Perry, A.L., P.J. Low, J.R. Ellis, and J.D. Reynolds**, 2005: Climate change and distribution
17 shifts in marine fishes. *Science*, **308(5730)**, 1912-1915.
- 18 **Peterson, B.J., J. McClelland, R. Curry, R.M. Holmes, J.E. Walsh, and K. Aagaard**, 2006:
19 Trajectory shifts in the Arctic and subarctic freshwater cycle. *Science*, **(313)**, 1061-1066.
- 20 **Petraitis, P.S.**, 1992: Effects of body size and water temperature on grazing rates of four
21 intertidal gastropods. *Australian Journal of Ecology*, **17(4)**, 409-414.
- 22 **Pew Ocean Commission**, 2003: *America's Living Oceans: Charting a Course for Sea Change -*
23 *a Report to the Nation.* Pew Oceans Commission, Arlington, VA, pp.1-144.
- 24 **Philip, S.** and G.J. Van Oldenborgh, 2006: Shifts in ENSO coupling processes under global
25 warming. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **33(11)**, L11704.
- 26 **Philippart, C.J.M., H.M. van Aken, J.J. Beukema, O.G. Bos, G.C. Cadee, and R. Dekker**, 2003:
27 Climate-related changes in recruitment of the bivalve *Macoma balthica*. *Limnology and*
28 *Oceanography*, **48(6)**, 2171-2185.
- 29 **Phillips, N.E.**, 2005: Growth of filter-feeding benthic invertebrates from a region with variable
30 upwelling intensity. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **295**, 79-89.

- 1 **Phinney, J.T., O. Hoegh-Guldberg, J. Kleypas, W. Skirving, and A. Strong, 2006: *Coral Reefs***
2 **and *Climate Change: Science and Management*. American Geophysical Union,**
3 **Washington, DC, pp. 1-244.**
- 4 **Podestá, G.P. and P.W. Glynn, 2001: The 1997-98 El Niño event in Panama and Galapagos: an**
5 **update of thermal stress indices relative to coral bleaching. *Bulletin of Marine Science*,**
6 **69(1), 43-59.**
- 7 **Polovina, J.J., E. Howell, D.R. Kobayashi, and M.P. Seki, 2001: The transition zone chlorophyll**
8 **front, a dynamic global feature defining migration and forage habitat for marine**
9 **resources. *Progress in Oceanography*, 49(1), 469-483.**
- 10 **Polovina, J.J., P. Kleiber, and D.R. Kobayashi, 1999: Application of TOPEX-POSEIDON**
11 **satellite altimetry to simulate transport dynamics of larvae of spiny lobster, *Panulirus***
12 ***marginatus*, in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands, 1993-1996. *Fishery Bulletin*, 97(1),**
13 **132-143.**
- 14 **Polovina, J.J., G.T. Mitchum, N.E. Graham, M.G. Craig, E.E. DeMartini, and E.N. Flint, 1994:**
15 **Physical and biological consequences of a climate event in the central North Pacific.**
16 ***Fisheries Oceanography*, 3(1), 15-21.**
- 17 **Polovina, J.P., G.T. Mitchem, and G.T. Evans, 1995: Decadal and basin-scale variation in mixed**
18 **layer depth and the impact on biological production in the Central and North Pacific,**
19 **1960-1988. *Deep-sea Research*, 42, 1701-1716.**
- 20 **Pomeroy, R.S., J.E. Parks, and L.M. Watson, 2004: *How Is Your MPA Doing? A Guidebook of***
21 ***Natural and Social Indicators for Evaluating Marine Protected Area Management***
22 ***Effectiveness*. International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources, The**
23 **World Conservation Union, Gland, Switzerland.**
- 24 **Porter, J.W., J.F. Battey, and G.J. Smith, 1982: Perturbation and change in coral reef**
25 **communities. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of***
26 ***America*, 79, 1678-1681.**
- 27 **Porter, J.W., P. Dustan, W.C. Jaap, K.L. Patterson, V. Kosmynin, O.W. Meier, M.E. Patterson,**
28 **and M. Parsons, 2001: Patterns of spread of coral disease in the Florida Keys.**
29 ***Hydrobiologia*, 460(1-3), 1-24.**
- 30 **Porter, J.W., V. Kosmynin, K. L. Patterson, K. G. Porter, W. C. Jaap, J. L. Wheaton, K.**
31 **Hackett, M. Lybolt, C. P. Tsokos, G. Yanev, G. M. Marcinek, J. Dotten, D. Eaken, M.**
32 **Patterson, O. W. Meier, M. Brill, and P. Dustan, 2002: Detection of coral reef change by**
33 **the Florida Keys Coral Reef Monitoring Project, In: *The Everglades, Florida Bay, and***

- 1 *Coral Reefs of the Florida Keys: an Ecosystem Sourcebook*, [Porter, J.W. and K.G. Porter
2 (eds.)]. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp. 749-769.
- 3 **Porter**, J.W. and O.W. Meier, 1992: Quantification of loss and change in Floridian reef coral
4 populations. *Integrative and Comparative Biology*, **32(6)**, 625.
- 5 **Porter**, J.W. and J.I. Tougas, 2001: Reef ecosystems: threats to their biodiversity. *Encyclopedia*
6 *of Biodiversity*, **5**, 73-95.
- 7 **Precht**, W.F. and R.B. Aronson, 2004: Climate flickers and range shifts of reef corals. *Frontiers*
8 *in Ecology and the Environment*, **2(6)**, 307-314.
- 9 **Precht**, W.F. and S. L. Miller, 2006: Ecological shifts along the Florida reef tract: the past as a
10 key to the future, In: *Geological Approaches to Coral Reef Ecology*, [Aronson, R.B.
11 (ed.)]. Springer, New York, NY, pp. 237-312.
- 12 **Puglise**, K.A. and R. Kelty, 2007: *NOAA Coral Reef Ecosystem Research Plan for Fiscal Years*
13 *2007 to 2011*. NOAA Technical Memorandum CRCP 1, NOAA Coral Reef Conservation
14 Program, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-128.
- 15 **Rabalais**, N.N., R.E. Turner, and W.J. Wiseman Jr, 2002: Gulf of Mexico hypoxia, aka "the
16 dead zone". *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*, **33**, 235-263.
- 17 **Raimondi**, P.T. and A.N.C. Morse, 2000: The consequences of complex larval behavior in a
18 coral. *Ecology*, **81(11)**, 3193-3211.
- 19 **Randall**, J.E., 1998: Zoogeography of shore fishes of Indo-Pacific region. *Zoological Studies*,
20 **37(4)**, 227-268.
- 21 **Randall**, J.E., J.L. Earle, R.L. Pyle, J.D. Parrish, and T. Hayes, 1993: Annotated checklist of the
22 fishes of Midway Atoll, Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Pacific Science*, **47**, 356-400.
- 23 **Rauzon**, M.J., 2001: *Isles of Refuge: Wildlife and History of the North-Western Hawaiian*
24 *Islands*. University of Hawaii Press.
- 25 **Reaser**, J.K., R. Pomerance, and P.O. Thomas, 2000: Coral bleaching and global climate change:
26 scientific findings and policy recommendations. *Conservation Biology*, **14(5)**, 1500-1511.
- 27 **Reed**, J.K., 2002: Deep-water *Oculina* coral reefs of Florida: biology, impacts, and management.
28 *Hydrobiologia*, **471(1)**, 43-55.

- 1 **Rignot**, E. and P. Kanagaratnam, 2006: Changes in the velocity structure of the Greenland
2 icesheet. *Science*, **311(986)**, 990.
- 3 **Robblee**, M.B., T.R. Barber, P.R. Carlson Jr, M.J. Durako, J.W. Fourqurean, L.K. Muehlstein,
4 D. Porter, L.A. Yarbro, R.T. Zieman, and J.C. Zieman, 1991: Mass mortality of the
5 tropical seagrass *Thalassia testudinum* in Florida Bay (USA). *Marine Ecology Progress*
6 *Series*, **71(3)**, 297-299.
- 7 **Roberts**, C.M., 1996: Settlement and beyond: population regulation and community structure of
8 reef fishes, [Polunin, N.V.C. (ed.)]. Chapman and Hall Ltd, London, England, UK and
9 New York, New York, USA, pp. 85-112.
- 10 **Roberts**, C.M., 1997a: Connectivity and management of Caribbean coral reefs. *Science*,
11 **278(5342)**, 1454-1457.
- 12 **Roberts**, C.M., 1997b: Ecological advice for the global fisheries crisis. *Trends in Ecology &*
13 *Evolution*, **12(1)**, 35-38.
- 14 **Roberts**, C.M., 2005: Marine protected areas and biodiversity conservation, In: *Marine*
15 *Conservation Biology: the Science of Maintaining the Sea's Biodiversity*, [Norse, E. and
16 L.B. Crowder (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 265-279.
- 17 **Roberts**, C.M., S. Andelman, G. Branch, R.H. Bustamante, J.C. Castilla, J. Dugan, B.S. Halpern,
18 K.D. Lafferty, H. Leslie, J. Lubchenco, D. MacArdle, H.P. Possingham, M. Ruckelshaus,
19 and R.R. Warner, 2003a: Ecological criteria for evaluating candidate sites for marine
20 reserves. *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S199-S214.
- 21 **Roberts**, C.M., G. Branch, R.H. Bustamante, J.C. Castilla, J. Dugan, B.S. Halpern, K.D.
22 Lafferty, H. Leslie, J. Lubchenco, D. McArdle, M. Ruckelshaus, and R.R. Warner,
23 2003b: Application of ecological criteria in selecting marine reserves and developing
24 reserve networks. *Ecological Applications*, **13**, S215-S228.
- 25 **Roberts**, C.M., B. Halpern, S.R. Palumbi, and R.R. Warner, 2001: Designing marine reserve
26 networks: why small, isolated protected areas are not enough. *Conservation Biology in*
27 *Practice*, **2(3)**, 11-17.
- 28 **Roberts**, C.M., C.J. McClean, J.E.N. Veron, J.P. Hawkins, G.R. Allen, D.E. McAllister, C.G.
29 Mittermeier, F.W. Schueler, M. Spalding, and F. Wells, 2002: Marine biodiversity
30 hotspots and conservation priorities for tropical reefs. *Science*, **295(5558)**, 1280-1284.
- 31 **Roberts**, C.M., J. D. Reynolds, I. M. Côté, and J. P. Hawkins, 2006: Redesigning coral reef
32 conservation, In: *Coral Reef Conservation*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK,
33 pp. 515-537.

- 1 **Roberts, H.H., L.J.Jr. Rouse, and N.D. Walker, 1983: Evolution of cold-water stress conditions**
2 **in high-latitude reef systems: Florida Reef Tract and the Bahama Banks. *Caribbean***
3 ***Journal of Science*, **19(55)**, 60.**
- 4 **Roberts, J.M., A.J. Wheeler, and A. Freiwald, 2006: Reefs of the deep: the biology and geology**
5 **of cold-water coral ecosystems. *Science*, **312(5773)**, 543-547.**
- 6 **Roberts, S. and M. Hirshfield, 2004: Deep-sea corals: out of sight, but no longer out of mind.**
7 ***Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*, **2(3)**, 123-130.**
- 8 **Robertson, D.R., J.H. Choat, J.M. Posada, J. Pitt, and J.L. Ackerman, 2005: Ocean surgeonfish**
9 ***Acanthurus bahianus*. II. Fishing effects on longevity, size and abundance? *Marine***
10 ***Ecology Progress Series*, **295**, 245-256.**
- 11 **Roessig, J.M., C.M. Woodley, J.J. Cech, and L.J. Hansen, 2004: Effects of global climate change**
12 **on marine and estuarine fishes and fisheries. *Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries*,**
13 ****14(2)**, 251-275.**
- 14 **Rogers, A.D., 1999: The biology of *Lophelia pertusa* (Linnaeus 1758) and other deep-water**
15 **reef-forming corals and impacts from human activities. *International Review of***
16 ***Hydrobiology*, **84(4)**, 315-406.**
- 17 **Ruiz, G.M., P.W. Fofonoff, J.T. Carlton, M.J. Wonham, and A.H. Hines, 2000: Invasion of**
18 **coastal marine communities in North America: apparent patterns, processes, and biases.**
19 ***Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*, **31**, 481-531.**
- 20 **Sadovy, Y., 2006: Protecting the spawning and nursery habitats of fish: the use of MPAs to**
21 **safeguard critical life-history stages for marine life. *MPA News, International News and***
22 ***Analysis on Marine Protected Areas*, **8(2)**, 1-3.**
- 23 **Sagarin, R.D., J.P. Barry, S.E. Gilman, and C.H. Baxter, 1999: Climate-related change in an**
24 **intertidal community over short and long time scales. *Ecological Monographs*, **69(4)**,**
25 **465-490.**
- 26 **Sala, E., 2006: Top predators provide insurance against climate change. *Trends in Ecology &***
27 ***Evolution*, **21**, 479-480.**
- 28 **Sale, P.F., R.K. Cowen, B.S. Danilowicz, G.P. Jones, J.P. Kritzer, K.C. Lindeman, S. Planes,**
29 **N.V.C. Polunin, G.R. Russ, Y.J. Sadovy, and R.S. Steneck, 2005: Critical science gaps**
30 **impede use of no-take fishery reserves. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution*, **20(2)**, 74-80.**

- 1 **Salm, R., J. Clark, and E. Siirila, 2000:** *Marine and Coastal Protected Areas: a Guide for*
2 *Planners and Managers.* Report Number 3, International Union for Conservation of
3 Nature and Natural Resources, Washington, DC, pp.1-387.
- 4 **Salm, R.V. and S.L. Coles, 2001:** Coral bleaching and marine protected areas. In: *Proceedings of*
5 *the Workshop on Mitigating Coral Bleaching Impact Through MPA Design* [Salm, R.V.
6 and S.L. Coles (eds.)]. Proceedings of the Coral Bleaching and Marine Protected Areas,
7 pp. 1-118.
- 8 **Salm, R.V., S.E. Smith, and G. Llewellyn, 2001:** Mitigating the impact of coral bleaching
9 through marine protected area design. In: *Coral Bleaching: Causes, Consequences and*
10 *Response* [Schuttenberg, H.Z. (ed.)]. Proceedings of the Ninth International Coral Reef
11 Symposium on Coral Bleaching: Assessing and linking ecological and socioeconomic
12 impacts, future trends and mitigation planning, Coastal Management Report 2230,
13 Coastal Resources Center, University of Rhode Island, pp. 81-88.
- 14 **Salm, R.V., T. Done, and E. McLeod, 2006:** Marine protected area planning in a changing
15 climate, In: *Coral Reefs and Climate Change: Science and Management*, [Phinney, J.T.,
16 O. Hoegh-Guldberg, J. Kleypas, W. Skirving, and A. Strong (eds.)]. American
17 Geophysical Union, Washington, DC, pp. 207-221.
- 18 **Sammarco, P.W., 1980:** Diadema and its relationship to coral spat mortality: grazing,
19 competition, and biological disturbance. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and*
20 *Ecology*, **45**, 245-272.
- 21 **Sanford, E., 1999:** Regulation of keystone predation by small changes in ocean temperature.
22 *Science*, **283(5410)**, 2095-2097.
- 23 **Sanford, E., 2002:** The feeding, growth, and energetics of two rocky intertidal predators
24 (*Pisaster ochraceus* and *Nucella canaliculata*) under water temperatures simulating
25 episodic upwelling. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology*, **273(2)**, 199-
26 218.
- 27 **Scavia, D., J.C. Field, D.F. Boesch, R.W. Buddemeier, V. Burkett, D.R. Cayan, M. Fogarty,**
28 **M.A. Harwell, R.W. Howarth, C. Mason, D.J. Reed, T.C. Royer, A.H. Sallenger, and J.G.**
29 **Titus, 2002:** Climate change impacts on U.S. coastal and marine ecosystems. *Estuaries*,
30 **25(2)**, 149-164.
- 31 **Scheltema, R.S., 1986:** On dispersal and planktonic larvae of marine invertebrates: an eclectic
32 overview and summary of problems. *Bulletin of Marine Science*, **39**, 290-322.

- 1 **Schuttenberg**, H.Z. and P. Marshall, 2007: *Managing for Mass Coral Bleaching: Strategies for*
2 *Supporting Socio-Ecological Resilience*. Status of Caribbean coral reefs after bleaching
3 and hurricanes in 2005 Reef and Rainforest Research Centre, Townsville.
- 4 **Shallenberger**, R.J., 2006: History of management in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Atoll*
5 *Research Bulletin*, **543**, 23-32.
- 6 **Shanks**, A.L., B.A. Grantham, and M.H. Carr, 2003: Propagule dispersal distance and the size
7 and spacing of marine reserves. *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S159-S169.
- 8 **Shepherd**, A. and D. Wingham, 2007: Recent sea-level contributions of the Antarctic and
9 Greenland ice sheets. *Science*, **315**, 1529-1532.
- 10 **Sheppard**, C., 2006: Longer-term impacts of climate change on coral reefs, In: *Coral Reef*
11 *Conservation*, [Côté, I.M. and J.D. Reynolds (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press,
12 Cambridge, UK, pp. 264-290.
- 13 **Shinn**, E.A., 1989: What is really killing the corals. *Sea Frontiers*, **35**, 72-81.
- 14 **Shirayama**, Y. and H. Thornton, 2005: Effect of increased atmospheric CO₂ on shallow water
15 marine benthos. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **110(C9)**.
- 16 **Skeat**, H., 2003: *Sustainable Tourism in the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park*. 2003 Environment
17 by numbers: selected articles on Australia's environment 4617, Australian Bureau of
18 Statistics.
- 19 **Smith**, A., J. Monkivitch, P. Koloï, J. Hassall, and G. Hamilton, 2004: Environmental impact
20 assessment in the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park. *The Environmental Engineer*, **5(4)**, 14-
21 18.
- 22 **Smith**, S.G., D.W. Swanson, J.S. Ault, M. Chiappone, and S.L. Miller, In Press: Sampling
23 survey design for multiple spatial scale coral reef assessments in the Florida Keys. *Coral*
24 *Reefs*.
- 25 **Smith**, S.V. and R.W. Buddemeier, 1992: Global change and coral reef ecosystems. *Annual*
26 *Review of Ecology and Systematics*, **23**, 89-118.
- 27 **Smith**, T.M. and R.W. Reynolds, 2004: Improved extended reconstruction of SST (1854-1997).
28 *Journal of Climate*, **17(12)**, 2466-2477.
- 29 **Snyder**, M.A., L.C. Sloan, N.S. Diffenbaugh, and J.L. Bell, 2003: Future climate change and
30 upwelling in the California current. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **30(15)**.

- 1 **Sobel**, J.A. and C. Dahlgren, 2004: *Marine Reserves: a Guide to Science, Design, and Use*.
2 Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 1-383.
- 3 **Sotka**, E.E., J.P. Wares, J.A. Barth, R.K. Grosberg, and S.R. Palumbi, 2004: Strong genetic
4 clines and geographical variation in gene flow in the rocky intertidal barnacle *Balanus*
5 *glandula*. *Molecular Ecology*, **13(8)**, 2143-2156.
- 6 **Soto**, C.G., 2001: The potential impacts of global climate change on marine protected areas.
7 *Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries*, **11(3)**, 181-195.
- 8 **Sousa**, W.P., 1984: The role of disturbance in natural communities. *Annual Review of Ecology*
9 *and Systematics*, **15**, 353-391.
- 10 **Stachowicz**, J.J., J.R. Terwin, R.B. Whitlatch, and R.W. Osman, 2002: Linking climate change
11 and biological invasions: ocean warming facilitates nonindigenous species invasions.
12 *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*,
13 **99(24)**, 15497-15500.
- 14 **State of Queensland**, 1997: Integrated Planning Act.
- 15 **Steneck**, R.S., 1997: Fisheries-induced biological changes to the structure and function of the
16 Gulf of Maine ecosystem. In: *Proceedings of the Gulf of Maine Ecosystem Dynamics*
17 *Scientific Symposium and Workshop* Regional Association for Research in the Gulf of
18 Maine, pp. 151-165.
- 19 **Steneck**, R.S., 2006: Staying connected in a turbulent world. *Science*, **311(5760)**, 480-481.
- 20 **Steneck**, R.S. and M.N. Dethier, 1994: A functional group approach to the structure of algal-
21 dominated communities. *Oikos*, **69(3)**, 476-498.
- 22 **Steneck**, R.S., M.H. Graham, B.J. Bourque, D. Corbett, J.M. Erlandson, J.A. Estes, and M.J.
23 Tegner, 2002: Kelp forest ecosystems: biodiversity, stability, resilience and future.
24 *Environmental Conservation*, **29(4)**, 436-459.
- 25 **Steneck**, R.S. and E. Sala, 2005: Large marine carnivores: trophic cascades and top-down
26 controls in coastal ecosystems past and present, In: *Large Carnivores and the*
27 *Conservation of Biodiversity*, [Ray, J.C., K.H. Redford, R.S. Steneck, and J. Berger
28 (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 110-137.
- 29 **Steneck**, R.S., J. Vavrinec, and A.V. Leland, 2004: Accelerating trophic level dysfunction in
30 kelp forest ecosystems of the western North Atlantic. *Ecosystems*, **7(4)**, 323-331.

- 1 **Steneck**, R.S. and C.J. Wilson, 2001: Large-scale and long-term, spatial and temporal patterns in
2 demography and landings of the American lobster, *Homarus americanus*. *Journal of*
3 *Marine and Freshwater Research*, **52**, 1303-1319.
- 4 **Stewart**, R.R., T. Noyce, and H.P. Possingham, 2003: Opportunity cost of ad hoc marine reserve
5 design decisions: an example from South Australia. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*,
6 **253**, 25-38.
- 7 **Stillman**, J.H., 2003: Acclimation capacity underlies susceptibility to climate change. *Science*,
8 **301(5629)**, 65.
- 9 **Stobutzki**, I.C. and D.R. Bellwood, 1997: Sustained swimming abilities of the late pelagic stages
10 of coral reef fishes. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **149(1)**, 35-41.
- 11 **Stocker**, T.F. and O. Marchal, 2000: Abrupt climate change in the computer: is it real? In:
12 *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* , pp.
13 1362-1365.
- 14 **Swearer**, S.E., J.E. Caselle, D.W. Lea, and R.R. Warner, 1999: Larval retention and recruitment
15 in an island population of a coral-reef fish. *Nature*, **402(6763)**, 799-802.
- 16 **Taylor**, M.S. and M.E. Hellberg, 2003: Genetic evidence for local retention of pelagic larvae in
17 a Caribbean reef fish. *Science*, **299(5603)**, 107-109.
- 18 **The Group of Experts on Scientific Aspects of Marine Environmental Protection**, 2001:
19 *Protecting the Oceans From Land-Based Activities*. Land-based sources and activities
20 affecting the quality and uses of the marine, coastal and associated freshwater
21 environment United Nations Environment Program, Nairobi.
- 22 **The Nature Conservancy**, 2007: Florida Keys reef resilience program. The Nature Conservancy
23 Website,
24 <http://www.nature.org/wherewework/northamerica/states/florida/preserves/art17499.html>
25 , accessed on 7-27-2007.
- 26 **The Nature Conservancy and Partners**, 2004: *R² - Reef Resilience: Building Resilience into*
27 *Coral Reef Conservation; Additional Tools for Managers*. The Nature Conservancy,
28 <http://www.reefresilience.org/>.
- 29 **The Royal Society**, 2005: *Ocean Acidification Due to Increasing Atmospheric Carbon Dioxide*.
30 The Royal Society, London, 60.

- 1 **The State of Queensland and Commonwealth of Australia**, 2003: *Reef Water Quality*
2 *Protection Plan; for Catchments Adjacent to the Great Barrier Reef World Heritage*
3 *Area*. Queensland Department of Premier and Cabinet, Brisbane.
- 4 **The World Fish Center**, 2007: ReefBase: a global information system for coral reefs. ReefBase
5 Website, www.reefbase.org, accessed on 5-23-2007.
- 6 **Thorrold**, S.R., C. Latkoczy, P.K. Swart, and C.M. Jones, 2001: Natal homing in a marine fish
7 metapopulation. *Science*, **291(5502)**, 297-299.
- 8 **Thrush**, S.F. and P.K. Dayton, 2002: Disturbance to marine benthic habitats by trawling and
9 dredging: implications for Marine Biodiversity. *Annual Review of Ecology and*
10 *Systematics*, **33**, 449-473.
- 11 **Tilmant**, J.T., R.W. Curry, R. Jones, A. Szmant, J.C. Zieman, M. Flora, M.B. Robblee, D.
12 Smith, R.W. Snow, and H. Wanless, 1994: Hurricane Andrew's effects on marine
13 resources: the small underwater impact contrasts sharply with the destruction in
14 mangrove and upland-forest communities. *BioScience*, **44(4)**, 230-237.
- 15 **Tolimieri**, N., A. Jeffs, and J.C. Montgomery, 2000: Ambient sound as a cue for navigation by
16 the pelagic larvae of reef fishes. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **207**, 219-224.
- 17 **Tomanek**, L. and G.N. Somero, 1999: Evolutionary and acclimation-induced variation in the
18 heat-shock responses of congeneric marine snails (genus *Tegula*) from different thermal
19 habitats: implications for limits of thermotolerance and biogeography. *Journal of*
20 *Experimental Biology*, **202**, 2925-2936.
- 21 **Tompkins**, E.L. and W.N. Adger, 2004: Does adaptive management of natural resources
22 enhance resilience to climate change? *Ecology and Society*, **9(2)**, 10.
- 23 **Turgeon**, D.D., R.G. Asch, B.D. Causey, R.E. Dodge, W. Jaap, K. Banks, J. Delaney, B.D.
24 Keller, R. Speiler, C.A. Matos, J.R. Garcia, E. Diaz, D. Catanzaro, C.S. Rogers, Z. Hillis-
25 Starr, R. Nemeth, M. Taylor, G.P. Schmahl, M.W. Miller, D.A. Gulko, J.E. Maragos,
26 A.M. Friedlander, C.L. Hunter, R.S. Brainard, P. Craig, R.H. Richmond, G. Davis, J.
27 Starmer, M. Trianni, P. Houk, C.E. Birkeland, A. Edwards, Y. Golbuu, J. Gutierrez, N.
28 Idechong, G. Paulay, A. Tafleichig, and N. Vander Velde, 2002: *The State of Coral Reef*
29 *Ecosystems of the United States and Pacific Freely Associated States: 2002*. National
30 Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration/National Ocean Service/National Centers for
31 Coastal Ocean Science, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-265.
- 32 **U.S. Army Corps of Engineers**, 2007: Official website of the comprehensive Everglades
33 restoration plan. Comprehensive Everglades Restoration Plan Website,
34 <http://www.evergladesplan.org/index.aspx>, accessed on 5-23-2007.

- 1 **U.S. Census Bureau**, 2001: County and city data book: 2000. (13th Edition), 1-895.
- 2 **U.S. Climate Change Science Program and Subcommittee on Global Change Research**,
3 *2003: Vision for the Program and Highlights of the Scientific Strategic Plan*. U.S.
4 Climate Change Science Program, Washington, D.C..
- 5 **U.S. Commission on Ocean Policy**, 2004: *An Ocean Blueprint for the 21st Century. Final*
6 *Report*. U.S. Commission on Ocean Policy, Washington, D.C., pp.1-522.
- 7 **U.S. Congress**, 1972a: Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972. **U.S. Code Title 16 Chapter 33**
8 **Sec. 1251-1465**.
- 9 **U.S. Congress**, 1972b: Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act. **33 U.S.C. 1401-1445,**
10 **16 U.S.C. 1431-1445. Public Law 92-532**.
- 11 **U.S. Congress**, 2007: National Marine Sanctuaries Act. **Title 16, Chapter 32**.
- 12 **U.S. Department of Commerce**, 1996: *Final Management Plan/Environmental Impact*
13 *Statement for the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary, Volume I*. National Oceanic
14 and Atmospheric Administration, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-319.
- 15 **U.S. Department of Commerce**, 2000: *Tortugas Ecological Reserve: Final Supplemental*
16 *Environmental Impact Statement/Final Supplemental Management Plan*. National
17 Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-315.
- 18 **U.S. Department of Commerce**, 2006: *Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary Draft*
19 *Management Plan / Draft Environmental Impact Statement*. National Oceanic and
20 Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Sanctuary Program, Silver Spring, MD.
- 21 **U.S. Environmental Protection Agency**, 2007: *Climate Change and Interacting Stressors:*
22 *Implications for Coral Reef Management in American Samoa*. EPA/600/R-07/069,
23 Global Change Research Program, National Center for Environmental Assessment,
24 Washington, DC. Available from the National Technical Information Service,
25 Springfield, VA, and online at <http://www.epa.gov/ncea>.
- 26 **U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service**, 2005: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service conducting initial damage
27 assessments to wildlife and National Wildlife Refuges.
- 28 **U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service**, 2007: Origins of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. U.S. Fish
29 and Wildlife Service Website, <http://training.fws.gov/history/origins.html>, accessed on 5-
30 18-2007.

- 1 **Vargas-Ángel, B., J.D. Thomas, and S.M. Hoke, 2003:** High-latitude *Acropora Cervicornis*
2 thickets off Fort Lauderdale, Florida, USA. *Coral Reefs*, **22(4)**, 465-473.
- 3 **Wadell, J.E., 2005:** *The State of Coral Reef Ecosystems of the United States and Pacific Freely*
4 *Associated States: 2005*. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOS NCCOS 11,
5 NOAA/NCCOS Center for Coastal Monitoring and Assessment's Biogeography Team,
6 Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-522.
- 7 **Wahle, C., R. Grober-Dunsmore, and L. Wooninck, 2006:** Managing recreational fishing in
8 MPAs through vertical zoning: the importance of understanding benthic-pelagic linkages.
9 *MPA News*, **7(8)**, 5.
- 10 **Wainwright, P.C., 1994:** Functional morphology as a tool in ecological research, In: *Ecological*
11 *Morphology: Integrative Organismal Biology*, [Wainwright, P.C. and S.M. Reilly (eds.)].
12 University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL, pp. 42-59.
- 13 **Walker, N.D., H.H. Roberts, L.J. Rouse, and O.K. Huh, 1982:** Thermal history of reef-
14 associated environments during a record cold-air outbreak event. *Coral Reefs*, **1**, 83-87.
- 15 **Walker, N.D., L.J. Rouse, and O.K. Huh, 1987:** Response of subtropical shallow-water
16 environments to cold-air outbreak events: satellite radiometry and heat flux modeling.
17 *Continental Shelf Research*, **7**, 735-757.
- 18 **Walther, G.R., E. Post, P. Convey, A. Menzel, C. Parmesan, T.J.C. Beebee, J.M. Fromentin, O.**
19 **Hoegh-Guldberg, and F. Bairlein, 2002:** Ecological responses to recent climate change.
20 *Nature*, **416**, 389-395.
- 21 **Ware, J.R., 1997:** The effect of global warming on coral reefs: acclimate or die. In: *Proceedings*
22 *of the 8th International Coral Reef Symposium* , pp. 527-532.
- 23 **Warner, R.R., S.E. Swearer, and J.E. Caselle, 2000:** Larval accumulation and retention:
24 Implications for the design of marine reserves and essential fish habitat. *Bulletin of*
25 *Marine Science*, **66(3)**, 821-830.
- 26 **Watling, L. and M. Risk, 2002:** Special issue on biology of cold water corals: proceedings of the
27 first international deep-sea coral symposium. *Hydrobiologia*, **471**.
- 28 **Wells, S., 2006:** *Establishing National and Regional Systems of MPAs – a Review of Progress*
29 *With Lessons Learned*. Second Draft, UNEP World Conservation Monitoring Centre,
30 UNEP Regional Seas Programme, ICRAN, IUCN/WCPA – Marine.
- 31 **West, J.M., 2001:** Environmental determinants of resistance to coral bleaching: implications for
32 management of marine protected areas. In: *Proceedings of the Workshop on Mitigating*

- 1 *Coral Bleaching Impact Through MPA Design* [Salm, R.V. and S.L. Coles (eds.)].
2 Proceedings of the Coral Bleaching and Marine Protected Areas, pp. 40-52.
- 3 **West, J.M., P. A. Marshall, R. V. Salm, and H. Z. Schuttenberg, 2006:** Coral bleaching:
4 managing for resilience in a changing world, In: *Principles of Conservation Biology*,
5 [Groom, M.J., G.K. Meffe, and C.R. Carroll (eds.)].
- 6 **West, J.M. and R.V. Salm, 2003:** Resistance and resilience to coral bleaching: implications for
7 coral reef conservation and management. *Conservation Biology*, **17(4)**, 956-967.
- 8 **Westmacott, S., K. Teleki, S. Wells, and J. West, 2000:** *Management of Bleached and Severely*
9 *Damaged Coral Reefs*. IUCN, The World Conservation Union, Washington, DC.
- 10 **Whelan, K.R.T., J. Miller, O. Sanchez, and M. Patterson, In Press:** Impact of the 2005 coral
11 bleaching event on *Porites porites* and *Colpophyllia natans* at Tektite Reef, US Virgin
12 Islands. *Coral Reefs*.
- 13 **Whitfield, P.E., J.A. Hare, A.W. David, S.L. Harter, R.C. Muñoz, and C.M. Addison, 2007:**
14 Abundance estimates of the Indo-Pacific lionfish *Pterois volitans/miles* complex in the
15 Western North Atlantic. *Biological Invasions*, **9(1)**, 53-64.
- 16 **Wilkinson, C., O. Linden, H. Cesar, G. Hodgson, J. Rubens, and A.E. Strong, 1999:** Ecological
17 and socioeconomic impacts of 1998 coral mortality in the Indian Ocean: an ENSO impact
18 and a warning of future change? *Ambio*, **28(2)**, 188.
- 19 **Wilkinson, C.R., 1998:** *Status of Coral Reefs of the World: 1998*. Australian Institute of Marine
20 Science, Townsville, Australia.
- 21 **Wilkinson, C.R., 2000:** *Status of Coral Reefs of the World: 2000*. Australian Institute of Marine
22 Science, Townsville, Australia.
- 23 **Wilkinson, C.R., 2002:** *Status of Coral Reefs of the World: 2002*. Australian Institute of Marine
24 Science, Townsville, Australia.
- 25 **Wilkinson, C.R., 2004:** *Status of Coral Reefs of the World: 2004*. Australian Institute of Marine
26 Science, Townsville, Australia.
- 27 **Williams, D.M.B., E. Wolanski, and J.C. Andrews, 1984:** Transport mechanisms and the
28 potential movement of planktonic larvae in the central region of the Great Barrier Reef.
29 *Coral Reefs*, **3(4)**, 229-236.

- 1 **Williams**, E.H.Jr. and L. Bunkley-Williams, 1990: The world-wide coral reef bleaching cycle
2 and related sources of coral mortality. *Atoll Research Bulletin*, (355), 1-72.
- 3 **Williams**, E.H.Jr., C. Goenaga, and V. Vicente, 1987: Mass bleachings on Atlantic coral reefs.
4 *Science*, **238**, 877-878.
- 5 **Williams**, J.W., S.T. Jackson, and J.E. Kutzbach, 2007: Projected distributions of novel and
6 disappearing climates by 2100 AD. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of*
7 *the United States of America*, **104(14)**, 5738-5742.
- 8 **Willis**, B.L., C. A. Page, and E. A. Dinsdale, 2004: Coral disease on the Great Barrier Reef, In:
9 *Coral Health and Disease*, [Rosenberg, E. and Y. Loya (eds.)]. Springer-Verlag, Berlin,
10 Germany, pp. 69-104.
- 11 **Wooldridge**, S., T. Done, R. Berkelmans, R. Jones, and P. Marshall, 2005: Precursors for
12 resilience in coral communities in a warming climate: a belief network approach. *Marine*
13 *Ecology Progress Series*, **295**, 157-169.
- 14 **Wooninck**, L. and C. Bertrand, 2004: Marine managed areas designated by NOAA fisheries: a
15 characterization study and preliminary assessment. *American Fisheries Society*
16 *Symposium*, **42**, 89-103.
- 17 **World Resources Institute**, 1996: *World Resources 1996-97: the Urban Environment*. United
18 Nations Environment Programme, United Nations Development Programme, and the
19 World Bank, pp.1-384.
- 20 **World Resources Institute**, 2000: *Gridded Population of the World*. Version 2, Center for
21 International Earth Science Information Network, Columbia University, Palisades, NY.
- 22 **Yamada**, S.B., B.R. Dumbauld, A. Kalin, C.E. Hunt, R. Figlar-Barnes, and A. Randall, 2005:
23 Growth and persistence of a recent invader *Carcinus maenas* in estuaries of the
24 northeastern Pacific. *Biological Invasions*, **7(2)**, 309-321.
- 25 **Zacherl**, D., S.D. Gaines, and S.I. Lonhart, 2003: The limits to biogeographical distributions:
26 insights from the northward range extension of the marine snail, *Kelletia kelletii* (Forbes,
27 1852). *Journal of Biogeography*, **30(6)**, 913-924.
- 28 **Zervas**, C., 2001: *Sea Level Variations of the United States, 1854-1999*. Technical Report NOS
29 CO-OPS 36, US Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric
30 Administration, National Ocean Service, Silver Spring, MD.
- 31
32

1 **8.7 Acknowledgements**

2 **Authors' Acknowledgements**

3 The case studies were prepared by Billy Causey and Steven Miller (Florida Keys National
4 Marine Sanctuary), Johanna Johnson (Great Barrier Reef Marine Park), Alan Friedlander
5 (Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument), and Satie Airamé (Channel Islands National
6 Marine Sanctuary). Johanna Johnson would like to thank all the expert scientists who contributed
7 to assessing the vulnerability of the Great Barrier Reef to climate change. Without their
8 leadership and knowledge we would not have such an in-depth understanding of the implications
9 of climate change for Great Barrier Reef species, habitats, key processes and the ecosystem, or
10 have been able to develop the management strategies outlined in this case study. Elizabeth
11 Mcleod (The Nature Conservancy) drafted the section on adapting to climate change, and Christa
12 Woodley (University of California at Davis) and Danny Gleason (Georgia Southern University)
13 drafted the section on current status of management system. Rikki Grober-Dunsmore (National
14 Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, MPA Science Institute) prepared Table 8.2. We thank
15 all the individuals who participated in the stakeholder workshop, 24-25 January 2007, and whose
16 lively discussion provided information and comments that helped form the contents and
17 conclusions of this chapter.

18

19 **Workshop Participants**

20

- 21 ▪ Maria Brown, Gulf of the Farallones National Marine Sanctuary
- 22 ▪ Deborah Cramer, Gloucester Maritime Heritage Center and Stellwagen Bank National
23 Marine Sanctuary Advisory Council
- 24 ▪ Daniel Gleason, Georgia Southern University and Gray's Reef National Marine
25 Sanctuary Advisory Council
- 26 ▪ Lynn Hale, The Nature Conservancy
- 27 ▪ Lara Hansen, World Wildlife Fund
- 28 ▪ Terrie Klinger, University of Washington and Olympic Coast National Marine Sanctuary
29 Advisory Council
- 30 ▪ Irina Kogan, Gulf of the Farallones National Marine Sanctuary
- 31 ▪ David Loomis, University of Massachusetts
- 32 ▪ Linda Paul, Hawaii Audubon Society
- 33 ▪ Bruce Popham, Marathon Boat Yard and Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary
34 Advisory Council
- 35 ▪ Teresa Scott, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife and Olympic Coast National
36 Marine Sanctuary Advisory Council
- 37 ▪ Jack Sobel, The Ocean Conservancy
- 38 ▪ Steve Tucker, Cape Cod Commission and Stellwagen Bank National Marine Sanctuary
39 Advisory Council
- 40 ▪ Lauren Wenzel, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
- 41 ▪ Bob Wilson, The Marine Mammal Center and Gulf of the Farallones National Marine
42 Sanctuary Advisory Council

43

44

1

2 **8.8 Boxes**

3

4 **Box 8.1.** Draft Goals of the National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2005-2015

5

6 **Goal 1.** Identify, designate, and manage sanctuaries to maintain the natural biological communities in
7 sanctuaries and to protect and, where appropriate, restore and enhance natural habitats, populations, and
8 ecological processes, through innovative, coordinated and community-based measures and techniques.

9

10 **Goal 2.** Build and strengthen the nation-wide system of marine sanctuaries, maintain and enhance the role
11 of the NMSP’s system in larger MPA networks and help provide both national and international
12 leadership for MPA management and marine resource stewardship.

13

Goal 3. Enhance nation-wide public awareness, understanding, and appreciation of marine and Great
Lakes ecosystems and maritime heritage resources through outreach, education, and interpretation
efforts.

Goal 4. Investigate and enhance the understanding of ecosystem processes through continued scientific
research, monitoring, and characterization to support ecosystem-based management in sanctuaries and
throughout U.S. waters.

Goal 5. Facilitate human use in sanctuaries to the extent such uses are compatible with the primary
mandate of resource protection, through innovative public participation and interagency cooperative
arrangements.

Goal 6. Work with the international community to strengthen global protection of marine resources,
investigate and employ appropriate new management approaches, and disseminate NMSP experience
and techniques.

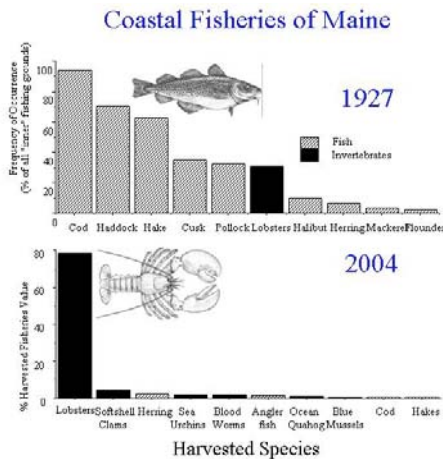
Goal 7. Build, maintain, and enhance an operational capability and infrastructure that efficiently and
effectively support the attainment of the NMSP’s mission and goals.

Box 8.2 The Western North Atlantic Food Web

Marine carnivores of the western North Atlantic were both more abundant and larger in the past. In Maine, archaeological evidence indicates that coastal people subsisted on Atlantic cod for at least 4,000 years (Steneck, 1997; Jackson *et al.*, 2001). Prey species such as lobsters and crabs were absent from excavated middens in the region, perhaps because large predators had eaten them (Steneck, Vavrinec, and Leland, 2004; Lotze *et al.*, 2006).

Today cod are ecologically extinct from western North Atlantic coastal zones due to overfishing. The abundant lobsters and sea urchins that had formerly been the prey of apex predators became the primary target of local fisheries. By 1993, the value of sea urchins harvested in Maine for their roe was second only to lobsters. As sea urchin populations declined, so too did communitywide rates of herbivory (Steneck, 1997). In less than a decade, sea urchins became so rare that they could no longer be found over large areas of the coast (Andrew *et al.*, 2002; Steneck, Vavrinec, and Leland, 2004).

These and other instances of “fishing down food webs” in the Gulf of Maine have resulted in hundreds of kilometers of coast now having dangerously low biological and economic diversity. Today bloodworms used for bait are worth more to Maine’s economy than cod (see Figure below). The trophic level dysfunction (*sensu* Steneck, Vavrinec, and Leland, 2004) of both apex predators and herbivores leave a coastal zone suited for crabs and especially lobsters -- the latter attaining staggering population densities exceeding one per square meter along much of the coast of Maine (Steneck and Wilson, 2001). The economic value of lobsters is high, accounting for nearly 80% of the total value of Maine’s fisheries as of 2004 (see Figure below). The remaining 42 harvested species account for the remaining 20%. If a disease such as the one that recently decimated Rhode Island’s lobster stocks (Glenn and Pugh, 2006) infects lobsters in the Gulf of Maine, there will be serious socio-economic implications for the fishing industry. Prospects for such a disease outbreak may increase because of climate-induced changes in the environment such as temperature increases that favor pathogen growth (Harvell *et al.*, 1999; 2002).



* Note: This figure is provisional, based on securing permission to reprint.

1
2
3
4

Box 8.3. Draft Objectives of the Goals of the National Marine Sanctuary Program That Are Relevant to Resource Protection and Climate Change (Goals 1, 4, 5, and 6 from Box 8.1)

Goal 1: Protect Resources.

- Objective 1.** Prepare sanctuary-specific management plans and regional and national programs and policies that utilize all program capacities to protect and manage resources.
- Objective 2.** Conduct and maintain routine contingency planning, emergency response, damage assessment, and restoration activities to preserve and restore the integrity of sanctuary ecosystems.
- Objective 3.** Develop and maintain enforcement programs and partnerships to maximize protection of sanctuary resources.
- Objective 4.** Review and evaluate the NMSP’s effectiveness at site, regional, and national levels, through both internal and external mechanisms.
- Objective 5.** Anticipate, characterize, and mitigate threats to resources.
- Objective 6.** Assess and predict changes in the NMSP’s operating, natural, and social environments and evolve sanctuary management strategies to address them, through management plan reviews, reauthorizations, and program regulatory review.
- Objective 7.** Designate new sanctuaries, as appropriate, to ensure the nation’s marine ecosystems and networks achieve national expectations for sustainability.

Goal 4: Sanctuary Science.

- Objective 1.** Expand observing systems and monitoring efforts within and near national marine sanctuaries to fill important gaps in the knowledge and understanding of the ocean and Great Lakes ecosystems.
- Objective 2.** Support directed research activities that support management decision making on challenges and opportunities facing sanctuary ecosystems, processes, and resources.
- Objective 3.** Develop comprehensive characterization products of ocean and Great Lakes ecosystems, processes, and resources.

Goal 5: Facilitate Compatible Use.

- Objective 1.** Work closely with partners, interested parties, community members, stakeholders, and government agencies to assess and manage human use of sanctuary resources.
- Objective 2.** Create, operate, and support community-based sanctuary advisory councils to assist and advise sites and the overall program in the management of their resources, and to serve as liaisons to the community.
- Objective 3.** Consult and coordinate with federal agencies and other partners conducting activities in or near sanctuaries.
- Objective 4.** Use other tools such as policy development, permitting, and regulatory review and improvement to help guide human use of sanctuary resources.

Goal 6: Improve International Work.

- Objective 1.** Develop multilateral program relationships to interact with, share knowledge and experience with, and learn from international partners to improve the NMSP’s management capacity, and bring new experiences to MPA management in the U.S.
- Objective 2.** Investigate the use of international legal conventions and other instruments to help protect sanctuary resources, including those that are transboundary or shared.
- Objective 3.** Cooperate to the extent possible with global research initiatives in order to improve the overall understanding of the ocean.
- Objective 4.** Make NMSP education and awareness programs accessible through international efforts to increase the global population’s awareness of ocean issues.

¹Additional goals of the NMSP are in Box 8.1.

1
2
3
4
5
6

Box 8.4. Draft Natural Resource Performance Measures of the National Marine Sanctuary Program

2015: 12 sites with water quality being maintained or improved.

2015: 12 sites with habitat being maintained or improved.

2015: 12 sites with living marine resources being maintained or improved.

2010: 100% of the System is adequately characterized.

2010: six sites are achieving or maintaining an optimal management rating on the NMSP Report Card.

2007: 100% of NMSP permits are handled in a timely fashion and correctly.

2010: 100% of sites with zones in place are assessing them for effectiveness.

1
2
3

Box 8.5. Adaptation Options for Resource Managers

Marine Protected Areas:

Adaptation Options for Resource Managers

- ✓ Identify ecological connections between and among marine ecosystems (*e.g.*, mangroves, coral reefs, and seagrass beds) and use them to inform management decisions (*e.g.*, preserve areas resistant to bleaching upcurrent from other areas that succumb to bleaching).
- ✓ Manage functional species groups necessary to maintaining the health of reefs and other ecosystems.
- ✓ Protect areas observed to be resistant to climate change effects to ensure a secure source of recruitment to support recovery in damaged areas.
- ✓ Design MPAs to include dynamic boundaries to protect predictable breeding and foraging habits and extensive buffers to protect migratory and pelagic species.
- ✓ Create buffer zones to accommodate ecosystem shifts in response to sea level rise and temperature change.
- ✓ Monitor ecosystems and have rapid-response strategies prepared to deal with disturbances.
- ✓ Manage human stressors such as fishing and inputs of nutrients, sediments, and pollutants within MPAs.
- ✓ Create buffer zones between intensive human activity and fully-protected marine reserves.
- ✓ Identify, protect, and restore areas observed to be resistant to climate change effects or to recover quickly from climate-induced disturbances.
- ✓ Replicate habitat types in multiple areas to spread risks associated with climate change.
- ✓ Maximize habitat heterogeneity and consider protecting larger areas to preserve biodiversity, biological connections among habitats, and ecological functions.
- ✓ Include entire ecological units (*e.g.*, coral reefs with their associated mangroves and seagrasses) in MPA design to maintain ecosystem function and resilience.
- ✓ Ensure that the full breadth of habitat types is protected (*e.g.*, fringing reef, fore reef, back reef, patch reef).

1

Box 8.6. Goal and Objectives of the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary (U.S. Department of Commerce, 1996)

Goal:

To preserve and protect the physical and biological components of the South Florida estuarine and marine ecosystem to ensure its viability for the use and enjoyment of present and future generations.

Objectives Required by the FKNMS Act:

Objective 1. Facilitate all public and private uses of the Sanctuary consistent with the primary objective of resource protection.

Objective 2. Consider temporal and geographic zoning to ensure protection of Sanctuary resources.

Objective 3. Incorporate regulations necessary to enforce the Water Quality Protection Program.

Objective 4. Identify needs for research and establish a long-term ecological monitoring program.

Objective 5. Identify alternative sources of funding needed to fully implement the management plan's provisions and supplement appropriations authorized under the FKNMS and National Marine Sanctuaries Acts.

Objective 6. Ensure coordination and cooperation between Sanctuary managers and other federal, state, and local authorities with jurisdiction within or adjacent to the Sanctuary.

Objective 7. Promote education among users of the Sanctuary about coral reef conservation and navigational safety.

Objective 8. Incorporate the existing Looe Key and Key Largo National Marine Sanctuaries into the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary.

Objectives Developed by the FKNMS Sanctuary Advisory Council:

Objective 1. Encourage all agencies and institutions to adopt an ecosystem and cooperative approach to accomplish the following objectives, including the provision of mechanisms to address impacts affecting Sanctuary resources, but originating outside the boundaries of the Sanctuary.

Objective 2. Provide a management system that is in harmony with an environment whose long-term ecological, economic, and sociological principles are understood, and which will allow appropriate sustainable uses.

Objective 3. Manage the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary for the natural diversity of healthy species, populations, and communities.

Objective 4. Reach every single user of and visitor to the FKNMS with information appropriate to his or her activities.

Objective 5. Recognize the importance of cultural and historical resources, and managing these resources for reasonable, appropriate use and enjoyment.

2

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20

<p>Box 8.7. Timeline for Establishment of Marine Reserves in the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary (CINMS)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 1998: Sportfishing group initiates discussions about marine reserves in the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary• 1999: California Department of Fish and Game and NOAA develop partnership and initiate community-based Marine Reserves Working Group process• 2001: Working Group recommendations delivered to California Department of Fish and Game and NOAA• 2003: California Fish and Game Commission established 10 state marine reserves and 2 state marine conservation areas established in state waters of the CINMS• 2006: Pacific Fisheries Management Council designated Essential Fish Habitat and Habitat of Areas of Particular Concern in adjacent federal waters of the CINMS prohibiting bottom fishing• 2006: Sanctuary released Draft Environmental Impact Statement to propose marine reserves in federal waters of the CINMS.• 2007: Pending - NOAA will release Final Environmental Impact Statement and final rule to complete the marine reserves in federal waters• 2007: Pending - California Fish and Game Commission will take regulatory action to close gaps between state and federal marine protected areas
--

1 **8.9 Tables**

2 **Table 8.1.** Types of federal marine protected and marine managed areas, administration, and
 3 legislative mandates. MPAs are primarily intended to protect or conserve marine life and habitat,
 4 and are a subset of marine managed areas (MMAs), which protect, conserve, or otherwise
 5 manage a variety of resources and uses including living marine resources, cultural and historical
 6 resources, and recreational opportunities (California Department of Fish and Game, 2007b).
 7

Type of MPA/MMA	Number of Sites	Administration	Mandate
National Marine Sanctuary	13	NOAA/National Marine Sanctuary Program	National Marine Sanctuaries Act
Fishery Management Areas	216	NOAA/National Marine Fisheries Service	Magnuson-Stevens Act, Endangered Species Act, Marine Mammal Protection Act
National Estuarine Research Reserve ¹	27	NOAA/Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management	Coastal Zone Management Act
National Park	42	National Park Service	NPS Organic Act
National Monument ²	3	National Park Service ²	NPS Organic Act ²
National Wildlife Refuge	109	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service	National Wildlife Refuge System Administration Act

8
 9 ¹The National Estuarine Research Reserve System is a state partnership program.
 10 ²The Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument is included here. It is co-managed by
 11 NOAA/National Marine Sanctuary Program and National Marine Fisheries Service, the U.S.
 12 Fish and Wildlife Service, and the State of Hawaii and was established by Presidential
 13 Proclamation 8031.

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **Marine Protected Areas**

1 **Table 8.2.** Type, number, area, and no-take area of federal marine managed areas (MMAs) and
 2 areas of Exclusive Economic Zones (EEZs) by region in U.S. waters (National Oceanic and
 3 Atmospheric Administration, 2006a).

Federal Marine Managed Areas (MMAs) in U.S. Waters (0-200 nm)						
Region	Type of MMA	Number	Total Area (km ²)**	Total Area No Take (km ²)	% Area No Take	Area of EEZ in Region (km ²)
New England	NP	0	0	0	0%	197,227
	NWR	1	30	0	0%	
	NMS	1	2,190	0	0%	
	FMA	30	212,930	0	0%	
	NERR*	1	27	0	0%	
Mid Atlantic	NP	3	36,472	0	0%	218,151
	NWR	22	15	0	0%	
	NMS	0	0	0	0%	
	FMA	9	686,379	0	0%	
	NERR*	5	460	0	0%	
South Atlantic	NP	8	1,421	119	8%	525,627
	NWR	19	3,705	564	15%	
	NMS	3	9,853	591	6%	
	FMA	11	974,243	349	<0.1 %	
	NERR*	5	928	0	0%	
Caribbean	NP	2	27	1	2%	212,371
	NWR	0	0	0	0%	
	NM***	2	128	76	59%	
	NMS	0	0	0	0%	
	FMA	6	168	55	33%	
	NERR*	1	7	0	0%	
Gulf of Mexico	NP	4	4,612	0	0%	695,381
	NWR	24	2,375	2	<0.1%	
	NMS	1	146	0	0%	
	FMA	7	368,446	0	0%	
	NERR*	5	2,195	0	0%	
West Coast	NP	6	595	0	0%	823,866
	NWR	15	226	16	7%	
	NMS	5	30,519	257	1%	
	FMA	56	386,869	0	0%	
	NERR*	5	57	0	0%	
Alaska	NP	3	29,795	0	0%	3,710,774
	NWR	3	212,620	0	0%	
	NMS	0	0	0	0%	
	FMA	17	1,326,177	0	0%	
	NERR*	1	931	0	0%	
Pacific Islands	NP	4	21	< 1	<1%	3,869,806
	NWR	10	281	158	56%	
	NM***	1	352,754	352,754	100%	
	NMS	3	3,556	1	<1%	
	FMA	6	1,467,614	0	0%	
	NERR*	0	0	0	0%	
National Total						10,413,230
	NP	42	72,943	120	0.16%	
	NWR	109	219,252	740	0.34%	
	NM	3	352,882	352,882	100%	
	NMS	13	46,264	591	1.3%	
	FMA	216	5,422,826	488	0.01%	
	NERR*	27	4,606	0	0.00%	
	TOTAL	410	6,118,773	354,820	5.8%	

**ALL
FEDERAL
MMAS[†]**

1
2 New England: Maine to Connecticut, Mid Atlantic: New York to Virginia, South Atlantic: North
3 Carolina to Florida. NP: National Parks, NWR: National Wildlife Refuges, NMS: National
4 Marine Sanctuaries, FMA: Fishery Management Areas, NERR: National Estuarine Research
5 Reserves, and NM: National Monuments.
6 * NERRs are state/federal partnership sites.
7 ** Total area includes only those sites for which data are available.
8 *** The Northwestern Hawaiian Islands Marine National Monument is scheduled to become a
9 no-take area in five years when all fishing is phased out. This site has been included in the no-
10 take category and will be the largest no-take MPA in the United States.
11 [†] This total is corrected for overlapping jurisdictions of Federal MMAs.
12
13

1 **Table 8.3.** Sites in the National Marine Sanctuary Program. Regions: PC = Pacific Coast, PI =
 2 Pacific Islands, SE = Southeast Atlantic, Gulf of Mexico, and Caribbean, NE = Northeast
 3 (National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2006c).

4
5
6

Site	Location	Region	Year		Yr of First Mgt		Status of Mgt Plan Revision
			Designated	Size (km ²)	Plan		
Channel Islands	CA	PC	1980	4,263	1983		2007 planned publication
Cordell Bank	CA	PC	1989	1,362	1989		Central CA Joint Mgt Plan Review ¹
Fagatele Bay	Amer. Samoa	PI	1986	0.66	1984		Ongoing
Florida Keys	FL	SE	1990	9,844	1996		2007 planned publication
Flower Garden Banks	TX	SE	1992	2.0	In preparation		
Gray's Reef	GA	SE	1981	58	1983		Published 2006
Gulf of the Farallones	CA	PC	1981	3,252	1983		Central CA Joint Mgt Plan Review
Hawaiian Islands HW ²	HI	PI	1992	3,548	1997		Published 2002
Monitor ³	NC	NE	1975	4.1	1997 ⁴		
Monterey Bay	CA	PC	1992	13,784	1992		Central CA Joint Mgt Plan Review
Olympic Coast	WA	PC	1994	8,573	1994		Ongoing
Papahānaumokuākea MNM ⁵	HI	PI	2006	~360,000	In preparation		
Stellwagen Bank	MA	NE	1992	2,188	1993		2007 planned publication
Thunder Bay ³	MI	NE	2000	1,160	1999		Ongoing
Key Largo ⁶	FL		1975	353			
Looe Key ⁶	FL		1981	18			

7

8 ¹The Central California Joint Management Plan Review is a coordinated process to obtain public
 9 comments on draft management plans, proposed rules, and draft environmental impact
 10 statements for the three Central California Sanctuaries.

11 ²HW = humpback whale.

12 ³The Monitor and Thunder Bay NMSs were designated for protection of maritime heritage
 13 resources (2007a; National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2007e).

14 ⁴This plan is actually a comprehensive, long-range preservation plan for the Civil War ironclad
 15 U.S.S. *Moonitor*.

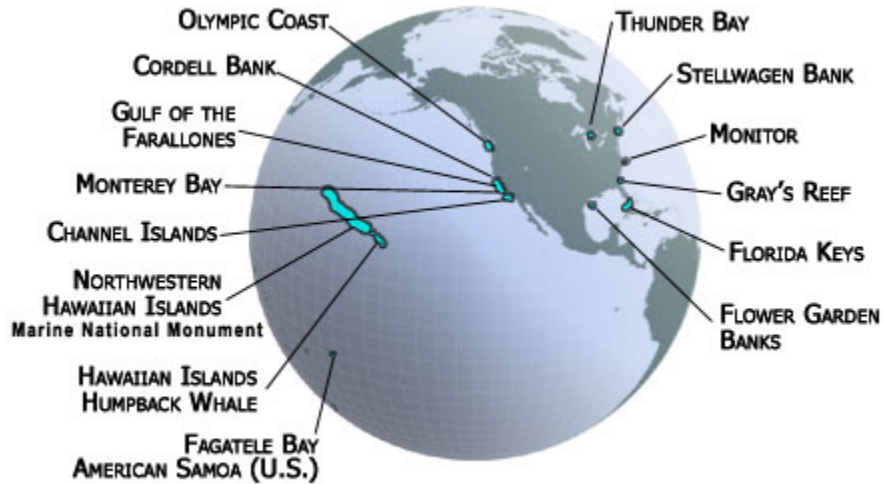
16 ⁵The Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument is co-managed by NOAA/National
 17 Marine Sanctuary Program and National Marine Fisheries Service, U.S. Fish and Wildlife
 18 Service, and the State of Hawaii.

19 ⁶The Key Largo and Looe Key NMSs were subsumed within the Florida Keys NMS as Existing
 20 Management Areas.

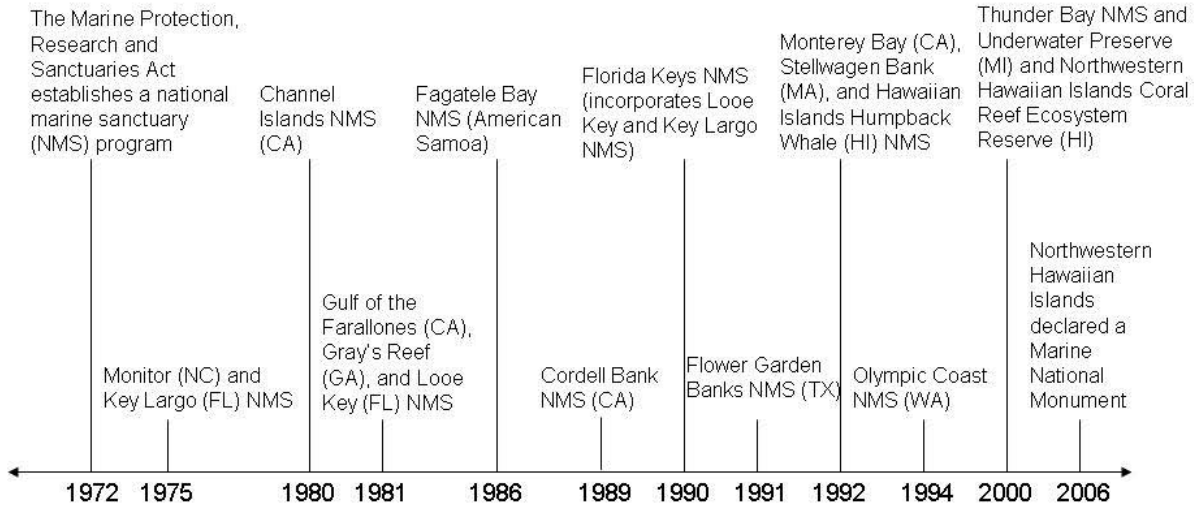
21

1 **8.10 Figures**

2 **Figure 8.1.** Locations of the 14 MPAs that compose the National Marine Sanctuary System
3 (National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2006c).



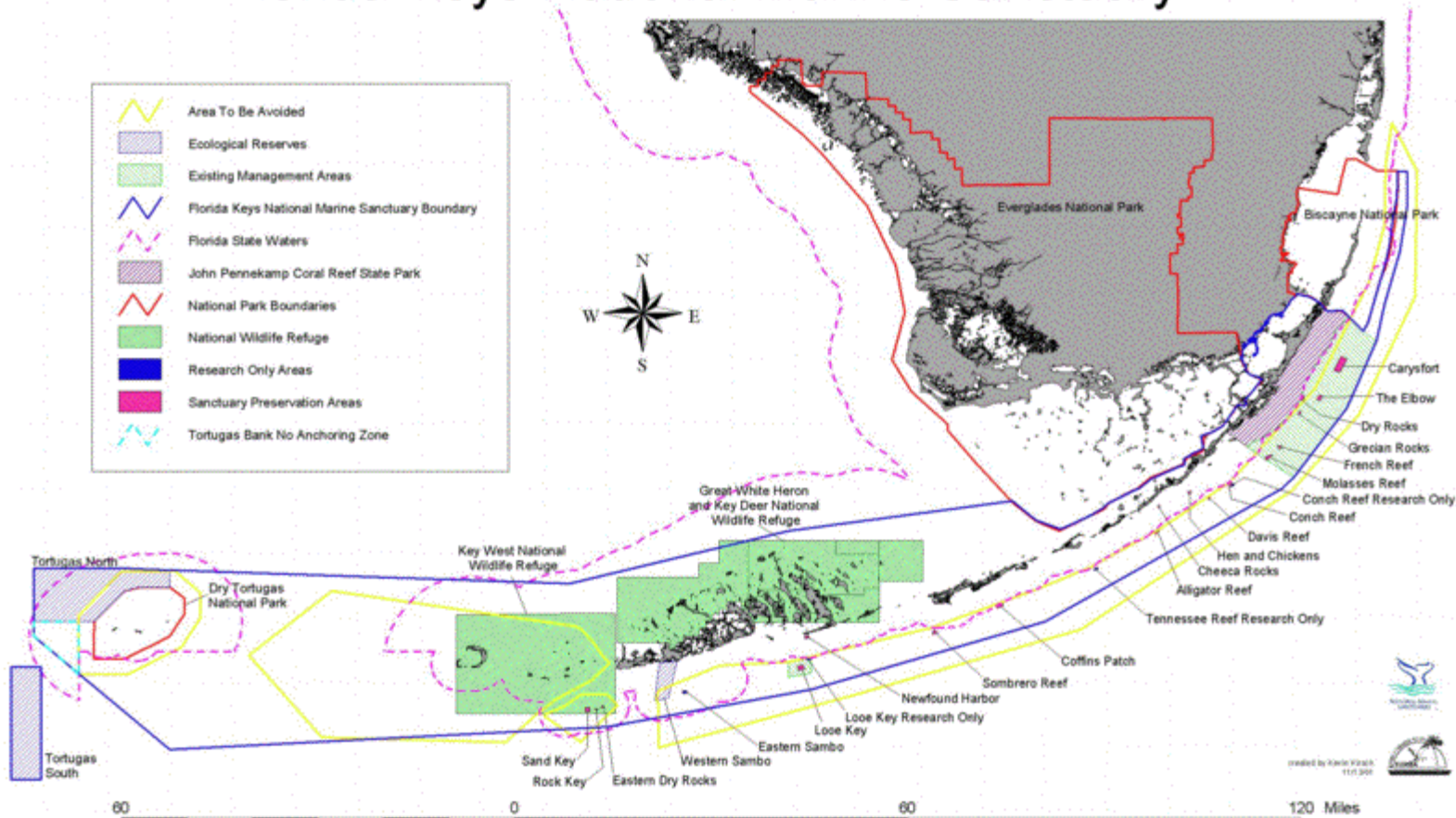
1 **Figure 8.2.** Timeline of the designation of the national marine sanctuaries in the National Marine
 2 Sanctuary Program (National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2006a).
 3



4
5

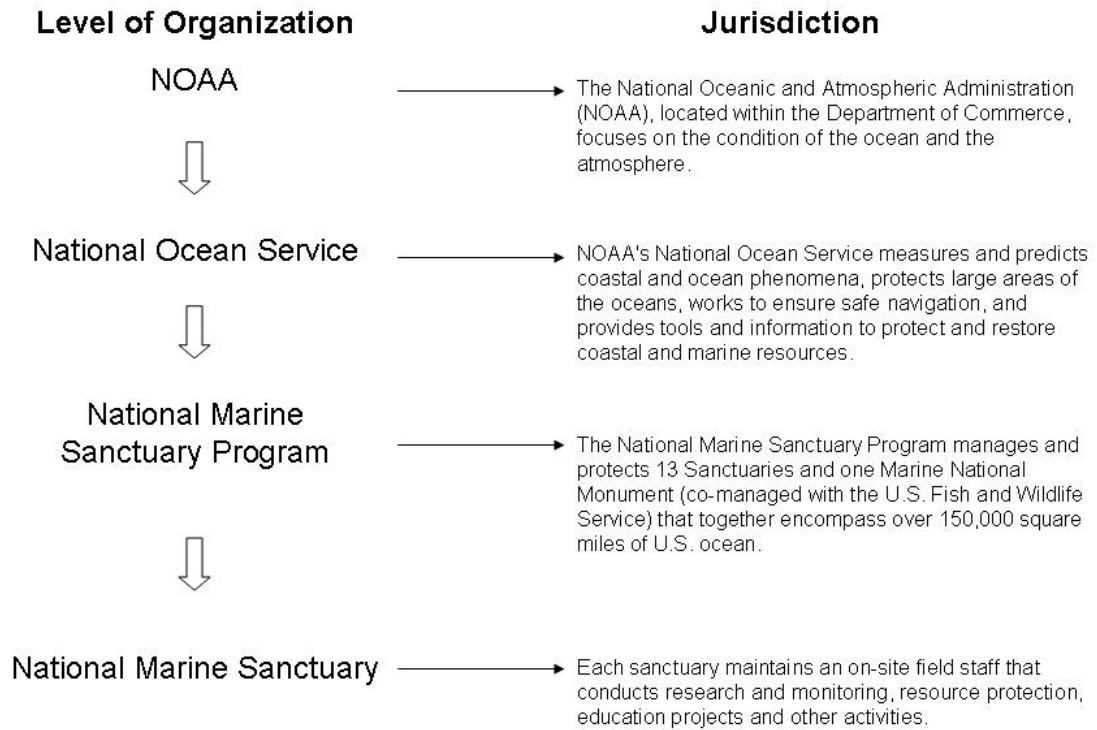
1 **Figure 8.3.** Map of the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary. The 1990 designation did not include the Tortugas Ecological
 2 Reserve located at the western end of the sanctuary, which was implemented in 2001. The Key Largo NMS corresponded to the
 3 Existing Management Area (EMA) just offshore of the John Pennekamp Coral Reef State Park; the Looe Key NMS corresponded to
 4 the EMA surrounding the Looe Key Sanctuary Preservation Area and Research Only Area (National Oceanic and Atmospheric
 5 Administration, 2007d).

Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary



6
7

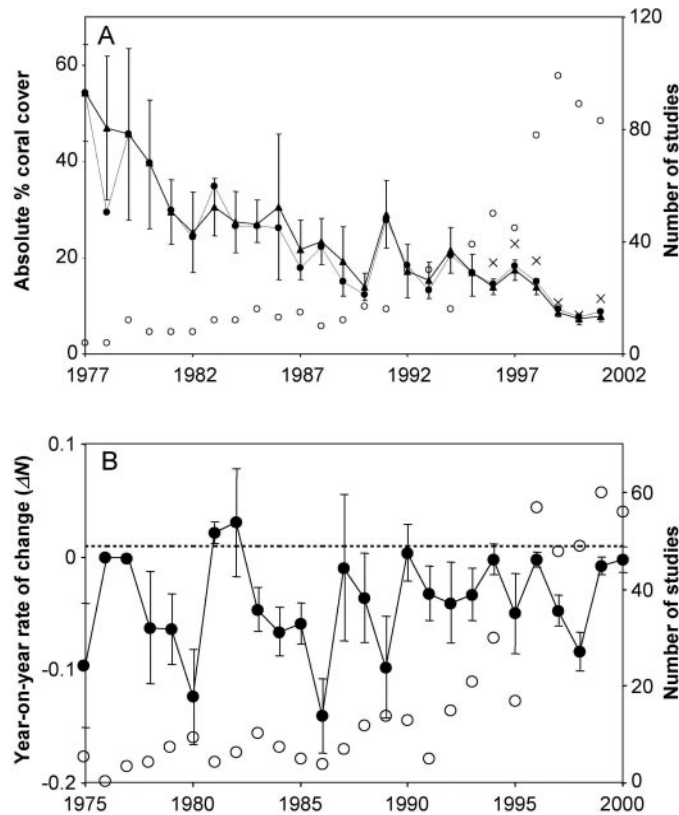
1 **Figure 8.4.** Organizational chart of the National Marine Sanctuary Program (NOAA National
 2 Ocean Service, 2006).
 3



Adapted from <http://www.oceanservice.noaa.gov/programs/>

4

1 **Figure 8.5.** Total observed change in coral cover (%) across the Caribbean basin over the past 25
 2 years (Gardner *et al.*, 2003). A. Coral cover (%) 1977-2001. Annual estimates (\blacktriangle) are weighted
 3 means with 95% bootstrap confidence intervals. Also shown are unweighted estimates (\bullet),
 4 unweighted mean coral cover with the Florida Keys Coral Reef Monitoring Project (1996-2001)
 5 omitted (x), and the number of studies each year (\circ). B. Year-on-year rate of change (mean $\Delta N \pm$
 6 SE) in coral cover (%) for all sites reporting two consecutive years of data 1975-2000 (\bullet) and the
 7 number of studies for each two-year period (\circ).
 8

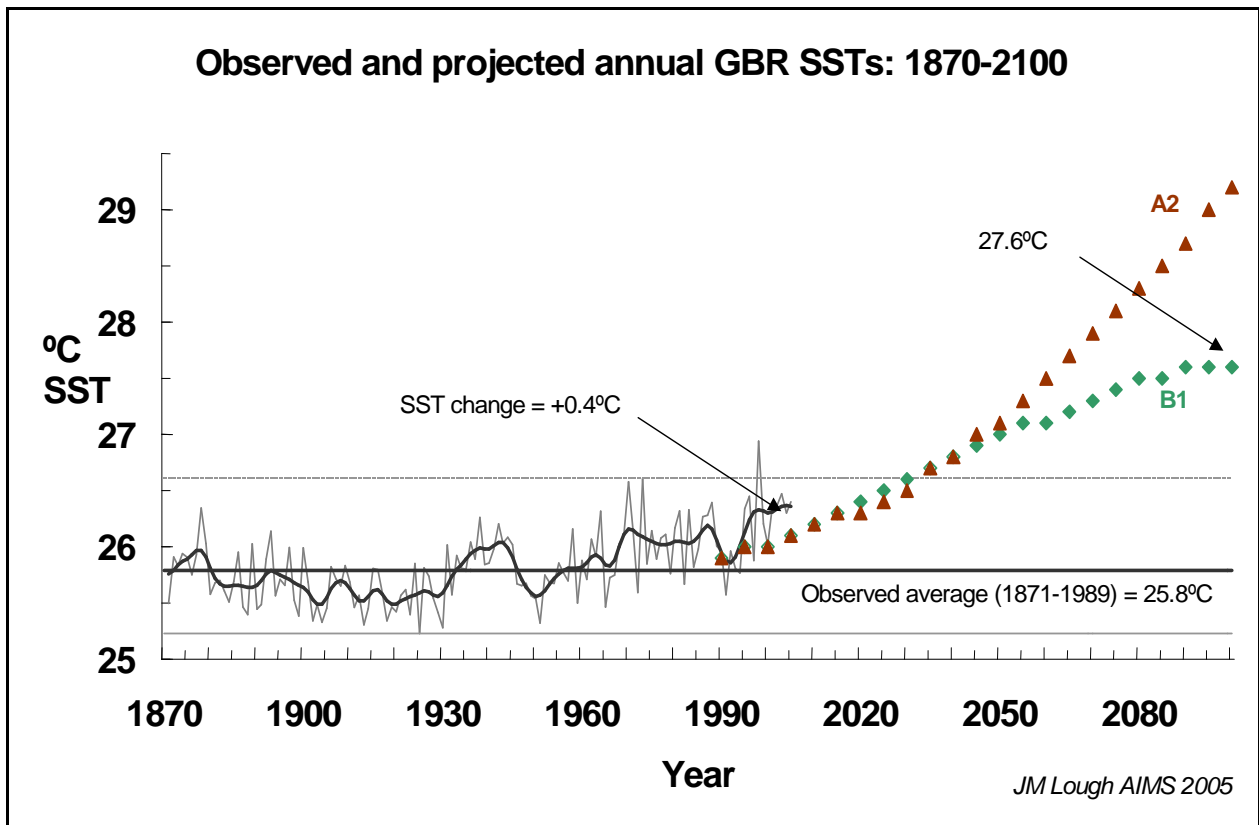


9
10

Figure 8.6. Map of the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park showing the adjacent catchment in Queensland. Modified from Haynes (2001) and courtesy of the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority.

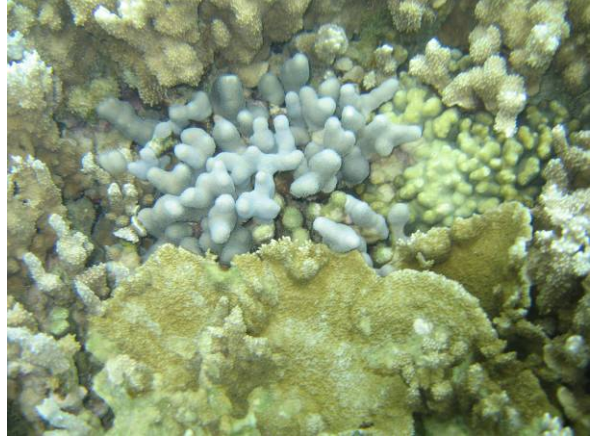


1 **Figure 8.7.** Sea surface temperature (SST) projections for the Great Barrier Reef (GBR) (Lough,
2 2007).
3



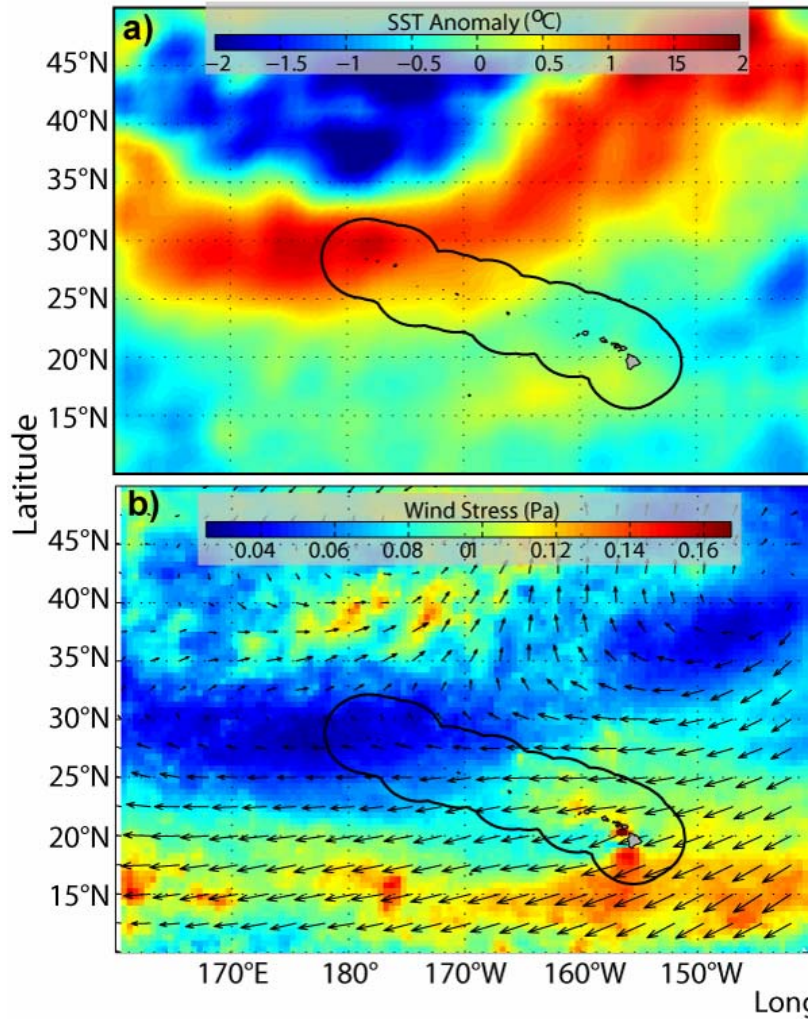
4
5

- 1 **Figure 8.8.** Endemic species from the Hawaiian Islands. A. Masked angelfish, *Genicanthus*
2 *personatus* (Photo: J. Watt), B. Rice coral, *Montipora capitata*, and finger coral, *Porites*
3 *compressa* (photo: C. Hunter), C. Hawaiian hermit crab, *Calcinus laurentae* (photo: S. Godwin),
4 D. Red alga, *Acrosymphyton brainardii* (photo: P. Vroom).

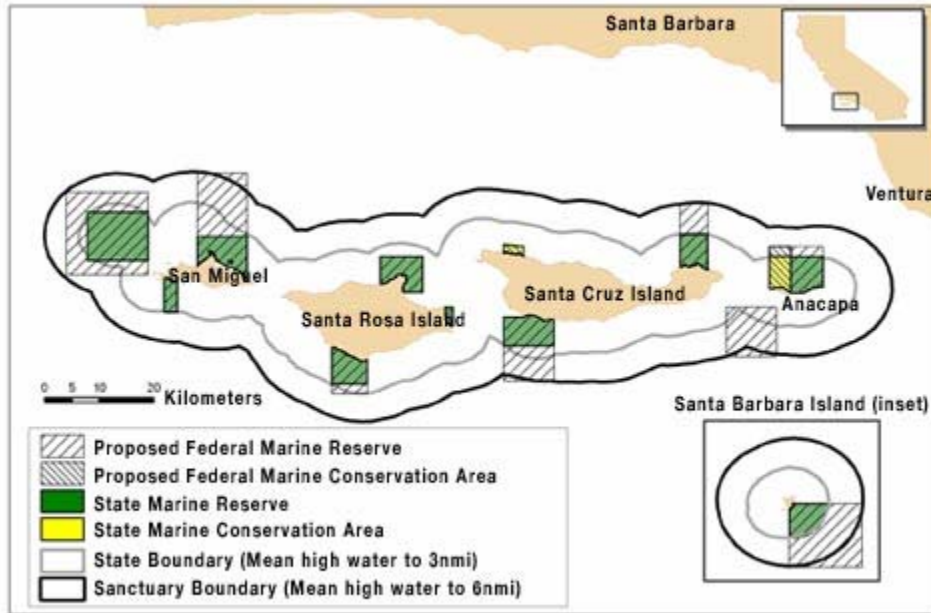


31
32
33
34
35

1 **Figure 8.9.** a) NOAA Pathfinder SST anomaly composite during summer 2002 period of NWHI
2 elevated temperatures, July 28–August 29. b) NASA/JPL Quikscat winds (wind stress overlaid
3 by wind vector arrows) composite during summer 2002 period of increasing SSTs, July 16–
4 August 13. The Hawaii Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) is indicated with a heavy black line; all
5 island shorelines in the archipelago are also plotted (adapted from Hoeke et al., 2006).



1 **Figure 8.10.** Map of the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary showing the location of
2 existing state and proposed federal marine reserves and marine conservation areas (Channel
3 Islands National Marine Sanctuary, 2007).
4



23 **NOAA's preferred alternative for marine zones in the Sanctuary.**
24
25